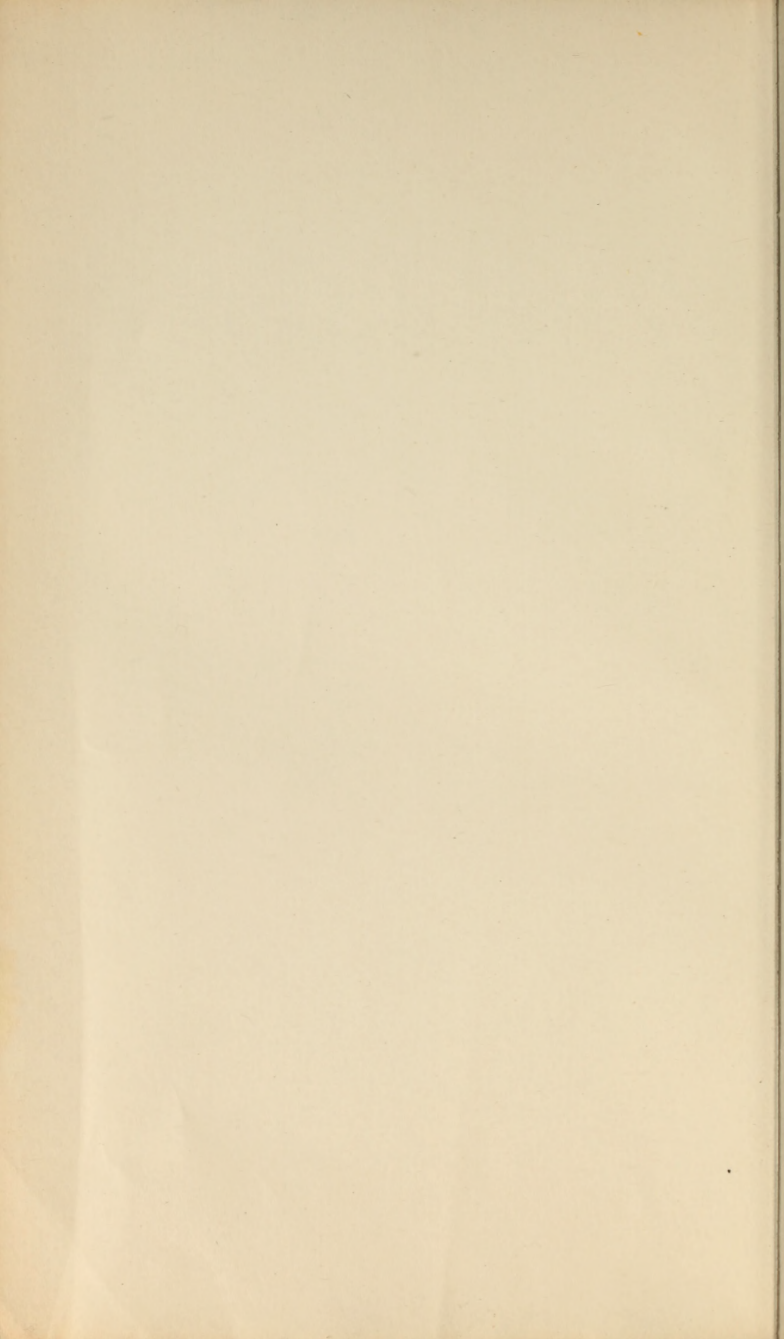


JAPANESE
IN
THIRTY HOURS

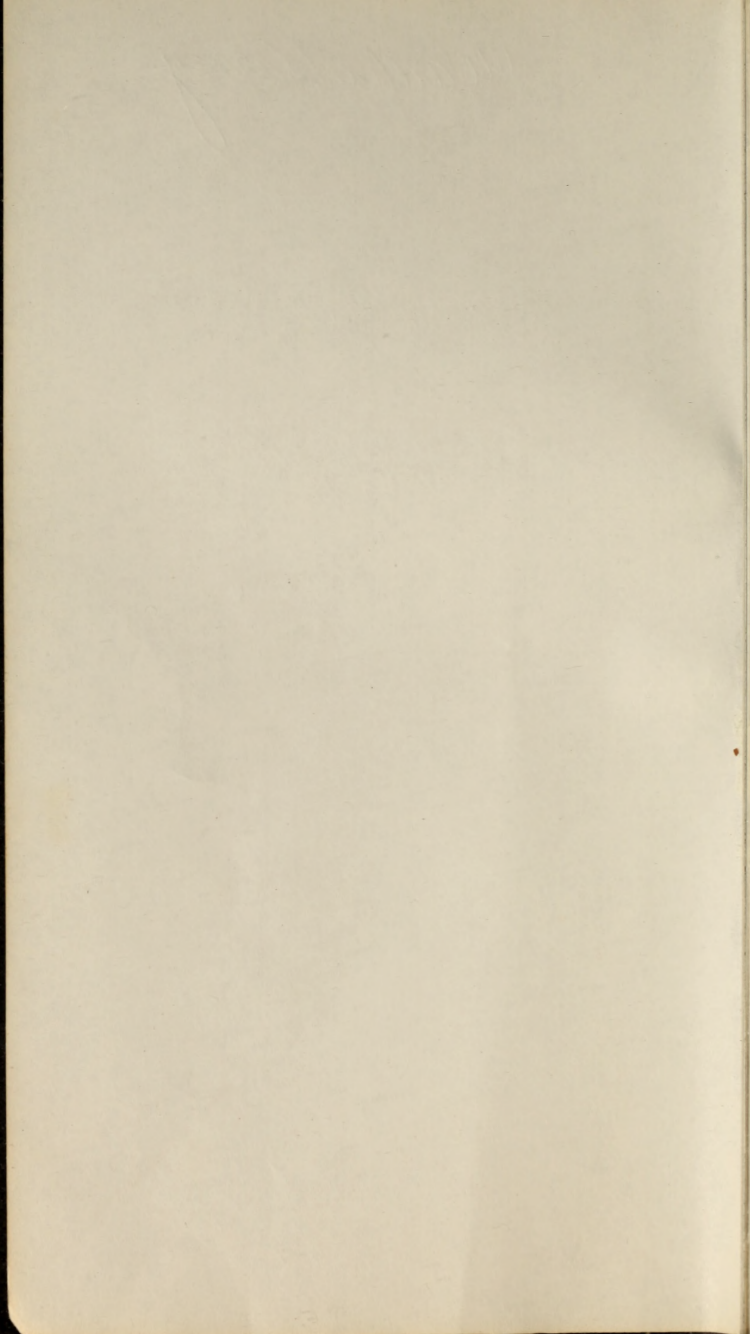
BY
EIICHI KIYOOKA

THE HOKUSEIDO PRESS



Martha Harvey

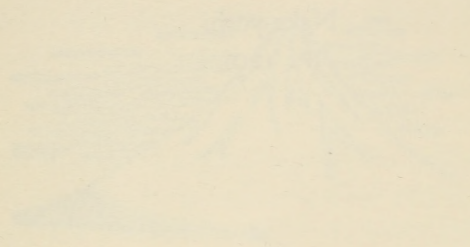
JAPANESE IN
THIRTY HOURS



JAPANESE IN
THIRTY HOURS

JAPANESE IN
THIRTY HOURS

JAPANESE



THE JAPANESE



Naka-yoshi
(P. 120)

JAPANESE IN THIRTY HOURS

FIRST COURSE IN JAPANESE LANGUAGE FOR
EITHER CLASS ROOM USE OR FOR SELF STUDY

Systematized Direct Method

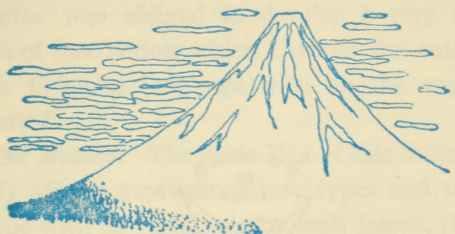
by

EIICHI KIYOOKA

Professor at Keio University

One time Instructor at Columbia University and

Visiting Professor at University of Hawaii



TOKYO
THE HOKUSEIDO PRESS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

FIRST EDITION 1942

REVISED EDITION 1949

RE-REVISED EDITION 1953



Published by The Hokuseido Press
3-12, Kanda-Nishikicho, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo

FOREWORD

These lessons in Japanese language were first developed while the author was an instructor of Japanese language and history at Columbia University Extension. Later they were published in serial form in the Japanese-American of New York City.

At the university the time allotted was only two hours a week and the students, who were mostly adults already in business, usually gave up the lessons after one semester, because they were learning the language in a hurry for business or for travels. Therefore the total number of hours available for instruction were no more than thirty hours, a semester being fifteen weeks. Under these conditions the instructor was obliged to develop a very efficient system of instruction which covered the entire field of the Japanese language with all the superfluity eliminated.

The Method The basic idea of this method is to classify all the expressions into types and to teach one type with its variations in each lesson, the variation being made by simple substitution of words. After all the types have been covered, a student—theoretically—will be able to express any idea in Japanese if he is provided with necessary words. And the words may be obtained from a dictionary.

A student is advised to first look over the table of contents thoroughly to see what variety of things he is to learn in this book.

The Lessons Every lesson in this volume is patterned after a uniform order. The *Example* is always given at the beginning, then the *Key Words*, *Vocabulary*, and *Exercises*. The *Example* serves as the model sentence. A student is expected to memorize it and also to learn to form different sentences of the same type by substitution of words. The *Key Words* are the uninterchangeable words in the *Example*. With the key words and vocabulary any number of sentences can be formed. A student should form many more sentences for himself than are found in the *Exercises*.

Each lesson will widen the scope of Japanese language. As the scope widens, a student should make use of it in actual conversation with a Japanese in so much the wider field of talk.

Any number of lessons may be taught together in one hour according to the circumstances and the ability of the student. At Columbia an average student found no difficulty in finishing the whole course in thirty hours. In fact the author has a record of having finished them in twelve hours with a special student. However, as the lessons are somewhat enlarged in this book, it will be advisable to allow a few more hours than exactly thirty for average students.

Usually the first three lessons are taken up together on the first hour. And it is a never failing thrill to an instructor to see the happy expressions of his pupils when they find themselves conversing in full sentences from the very first hour—"Is this a book?" "Yes, that is a book." "No, that is not a book." Etc.

After all, the language acquirement is a matter of practice. There should be ninety-five percent of drill and five percent of instruction and theorizing.

Vocabulary An average man cannot learn and master more than five or six words a day unless he makes the language study his chief concern. Too many words are more confusing than helpful. Therefore the vocabulary in these lessons has been kept down to the minimum. Words should be picked up from a dictionary whenever necessity arises. One should not be too ambitious about vocabulary. Learning sentence construction is much more important.

One interesting endeavour made in these lessons is the use of the foreign words in Japanese such as "table," "knife," "fork," and "note book." There are some six hundred of them in daily use—an unexpectedly large number until one makes a thorough investigation. Their pronunciation may be quite twisted, but they are very easy for foreigners to learn.

Pronunciation and Spelling In Japanese there

are five vowel sounds:

- a* approximately as the *a* in "mat"
- i* approximately as the *i* in "big"
- u* approximately as the *u* in "put"
- e* approximately as the *e* in "bed"
- o* approximately as the *o* in "soft"

Also, there are long vowel sounds, as in English, which have twice the value of the short vowel sounds listed above. For instance, the *a* in *father* is a long *a*; the *o* in *note* is a long *o*. In Japanese the long sound is indicated by either repeating the vowels as *Tookyoo* and *juu* (ten) or by a mark over the vowels as *Tōkyō*. Newspapers and books in general are often careless about indicating the long sounds and print *Tokyo* as if it were a two syllable word though it is pronounced as a four syllable word. *Yokohama* also is a four syllable word, for each of its syllables is short.

The use of the consonants is practically the same as in English, for, indeed, the Romanized system of Japanese spelling employed in this book was first organized by Dr. J. C. Hepburn on the basis of English usage in the early days. In recent years what is called the Japanese system of Romaji was created, but the old Hepburn system is preferred because it offers a much easier approach for the foreigners and also it gives a better start for the Japanese in their study of English. Both systems along with Kana

(the Japanese syllabary or letters) are explained more fully in the Appendices.

After all, pronunciation cannot be explained on paper. It is much better to have a teacher or friend demonstrate it.

Accent The accent in Japanese language is slight and unimportant. In most cases a wrong use of it will not make a speech ambiguous. And so, it is not touched upon in the lessons of this volume. However, it should be learned with care along with the pronunciation as it is one of the indicators of skill in the language.

One hint I wish to give here is that the Japanese accent is mainly "pitch accent" and not the "stress accent" as in English. Without this knowledge one may have to go through a long and puzzling struggle before grasping it.

Japanese is Easy for a Beginner Polite expressions, lady's way of speaking, and such subtleties which make the Japanese language one of the richest in the world have been carefully avoided in the lessons of this volume. Only one kind of expressions which are presentable enough for any one, but not too colloquial for foreigners, are given. In that one kind, the author believes, practically all the basic and necessary expressions have been covered. Therefore, at the end of the course a student is expected to be able to express any thought in Japanese with the aid of a dictionary.

Japanese is one of the richest languages in the world. Naturally the full mastery of its elegant uses is very difficult even for a native. However, the grammar of the spoken Japanese is very simple. For a beginner learning to speak it for daily purposes, the Japanese should be easier than any other language, which I trust the following lessons will prove.

Summer, 1949.

Tokyo

EIICHI KIYOOKA

CONTENTS

LESSON	Page
1. Sentences of the Type "This is a book."	1
2. Interrogation: "Is this a book?"	3
3. Negation: "This is not a book."	5
4. Possessive: "My book."	8
5. Adjectives (1): "A good book."	11
6. Adjectives (2): Noun-Adjectives	13
7. Adjectives as Predicate: "This is good." . . .	15
8. -WA and -GA	18
9. Sentences of the Type "Here is a book." . . .	21
10. Here is a man.	24
11. In, On, Under	26
12. Behind, In Front Of, Etc.	28
13. Negation of Adjectives: "Unimportant" . . .	30
14. Compound Sentences with BUT and AND . . .	34
15. Ari-masu and I-masu	36
16. Review Lesson (Zashiki)	39
17. Sentences of the Type "I open a box." . . .	42
18. Progressive Form: "I am opening a box." . .	44
19. Past Tense with -Masu	46
20. Present Perfect: "I have been here since yesterday."	49
21. Let us open the box.	51
22. Future	53

23. Progressive Form in Past and Future	57
24. Verbs in Succession	59
25. The Perfect: "I have done it."	62
26. Review Lesson (Asa-gohan)	65
27. Request: "Will you give me a box?"	67
28. Request with Verbs: "Will you open it?"	70
29. Numerals (1)	73
30. Numerals (2)	76
31. Numeral Adjuncts (1)	80
32. Numeral Adjuncts (2)	83
33. Ordinal Numbers	87
34. Comparison	89
35. Time and Money	92
36. Days, Months, and Years	96
37. Complex Sentences (1): "The house which I looked at was a very good house."	100
38. Complex Sentences (2)	103
39. Complex Sentences with When and Where (Genkan)	106
40. Use of Verbs without Masu; Past	110
41. Use of Verbs without Masu; Present	114
42. Use of Verbs without Masu; Future (Naka- yoshi)	117
43. Present Negative without Masu	121
44. Past Negative and Future Negative	125
45. Inflexion of Verbs	129

46. Review Lesson (Koi-nobori)	134
47. Possibility: "I can read it." (1)	137
48. Possibility: "I can read it." (2)	141
49. Passive Voice	143
50. Causative: "I make him go."	145
51. Regular Adjectives	149
52. I like; I want (Tōkyō-no Machi)	154
53. If and Must	157
54. Review Lesson (Lafcadio Hearn-no Uchi)	162

Appendices:

Japanese Writing and Pronunciation	169
Foreign Words in the Japanese Language	176
Japanese-English Vocabulary	187
English-Japanese Vocabulary	216

JAPANESE IN THIRTY HOURS

LESSON 1

Sentences of the type "This is a book."

Example:

Kore-wa hon-de su.
| | |
this book is

{ *This is a book.*
 These are books.

The Japanese language has no article. Also the number, gender and person are, for the most part, left unregarded. **Hon** may be one book or several books. One verb form serves for *is*, *are*, or *am*.

Whenever there is **-wa**, it is safe to assume that the preceding word or phrase is the subject of the sentence. In the same way **-de** usually denotes a predicate complement.

The full form of the word for *is*, *are*, or *am* is **ari-masu**, but in actual usage it is usually abbreviated to the mere last syllable **su**. (See Lesson 3, Negation.) In a formal speech the full form may be used:—**Kore-wa hon-de ari-masu**. But that is beyond our scope for the present.

The word order in a sentence is usually—the subject first, the verb last, and the predicate complement or the object between.

Key Words:

- wa** word-ending for subject
-de word-ending for predicate complement¹
su (ari-masu) *is, are, am*

Key Words are the essential frame-work which is always used in forming sentences of the same type.

Substituting **sore** in place of **Kore**, we have:—

Sore-wa	hon-de	su.	{ <i>That is a book.</i> <i>Those are books.</i>
that	book	is	

Because the person is unregarded in Japanese, "I am a man" is a sentence of the same type.

Watakushi-wa	otoko-de	su.	<i>I am a man.</i>
I	man	is	

Thus any number of sentences may be formed upon the frame-work of the key words.

Let us see what Exercises we can have with the five words of the Vocabulary.

Vocabulary:

kore	<i>this, these</i>
sore	<i>that, those</i>

¹ According to the regular Japanese grammar **-wa** and **-de** are called **Tenioha** or post-positions (in analogy to the English prepositions) and they are treated as independent words. However, from class room experiences I have decided to treat them as endings, because a foreign student is very liable to forget them as too insignificant unless they are attached securely to the preceding word with a hyphen.

hon	<i>book, books</i>
watakushi	<i>I, myself</i>
otoko	<i>man, men</i>

Exercices:

Kore-wa hon-de su.	{ This is a book. These are books.
Kore-wa watakushi-de su.	This is myself.
Kore-wa otoko-de su.	{ This is a man. These are men.
Sore-wa hon-de su.	{ That is a book. Those are books.
Sore-wa watakushi-de su.	That is myself.
Sore-wa otoko-de su.	{ That is a man. Those are men.
Watakushi-wa otoko-de su.	I am a man.
Watakushi-wa sore-de su.	I am that.

LESSON 2
Interrogation: "Is this a book?"**Example:**

Kore-wa	hon-de	su	ka?	{ <i>Is this a book?</i> <i>Are these books?</i>
this	book	is	?	

An interrogative sentence is formed by the simple addition of **ka** at the end. The order of the words is not changed. This **ka** will turn any sentence interrogative—not only simple sentences but long, complicated ones.

Kore-wa nan'-de su ka?
 | | | |
 this what is ?

{ What is this?
 { What are these?

Nan' is an abbreviation of nani (*what*). So, note that a word like *what* (or *who* and *where*) is placed at the usual position in a sentence, which makes the Japanese language much simpler than English.

Key Words:

-wa word-ending for subject
 -de word-ending for predicate complement
 su (ari-masu) *is, are, am*
 ka ?

Vocabulary:

hai *yes*
 nan' (nani) *what?*
 anata *you*
 "naifu" (an English word) *knife, knives*

Exercises:

Kore-wa hon-de su ka?	{ Is this a book? { Are these books?
Hai, sore-wa hon-de su.	{ Yes, that is a book. { Yes, those are books.
Sore-wa anata-de su ka?	Is that you?
Hai, sore-wa watakushi-de su.	Yes, that is myself.
Anata-wa otoko-de su ka?	Are you a man?
Hai, watakushi-wa otoko-de su.	Yes, I am a man.
Sore-wa naifu-de su ka?	{ Is that a knife? { Are those knives?

Hai, kore-wa naifu-de su.	{ Yes, this is a knife. { Yes, these are knives.
Kore-wa nan'-de su ka?	{ What is this? { What are these?
Sore-wa hon-de su.	{ That is a book. { Those are books.
Sore-wa nan'-de su ka?	{ What is that? { What are those?
Sore-wa naifu-de su.	{ That is a knife. { Those are knives.
Anata-wa nan'-de su ka?	What are you?
Watakushi-wa otoko-de su.	I am a man.
Watakushi-wa nan'-de su ka?	What am I?
Anata-wa otoko-de su.	You are a man.

LESSON 3

Negation: "This is not a book."

Example:

Kore-wa hon-de ari-masen.	{ <i>This is not a book.</i> { <i>These are not books.</i>
<div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> this </div> <div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> book </div> <div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> is not </div>	

In negation the full form of the verb is used, because **ari-masen** has no abbreviated form.

To explain more fully, **ari** is the verb *to be* and **masu** is an auxiliary verb which has a usage analogous to that of the English *do*. This **masu** may be used after any verb, and the negation, past and future tenses, etc. can be formed by its inflexion. Therefore,

learning the inflexion of **masu** alone will enable one to make use of all verbs in simple expressions.

Kore-wa hon-de ari-masen ka? *Isn't this a book?*
The above usage of interrogation in negative form is exactly the same as in English. It implies that the speaker thinks that it is a book.

Key Words:

-wa	word-ending for subject
-de	word-ending for predicate complement
ari-masen	<i>is not, are not, am not</i>

Vocabulary:

"fooku" (English word)	<i>fork</i>
ie	<i>no</i>
-san	<i>Mr., Mrs., Miss</i> (Used after names. Here again we see that the Japanese language leaves gender unregarded)
soo	<i>so</i>
Soo-de su	<i>That is so</i> (contraction of sore-wa soo-de su)
Soo-de ari-masen	<i>That is not so</i> (contraction of sore-wa soo-de ari-masen.)
Soo-de su ka?	<i>Is that so?</i>

Exercises:

Sore-wa hon-de su ka?	{ <i>Is that a book?</i> <i>Are those books?</i>
Iie, kore-wa hon-de ari-masen.	{ <i>No, this is not a book.</i> <i>No, these are not books.</i>

Sore-wa fooku-de su ka?	{ Is that a fork? { Are those forks?
Iie, sore-wa fooku-de ari-masen.	No, that is not a fork. (Also plural)
Sore-wa naifu-de su.	That is a knife. (Also plural)
Anata-wa Smith-san-de su ka?	Are you Mr. Smith? (Or Miss or Mrs.)
Iie, watakushi-wa Smith-de ari-masen.	No, I am not Smith. ¹
Anata-wa Kiyooka-san-de su ka?	Are you Mr. Kiyooka? (Or Miss, Mrs.)
Hai, soo-de su.	Yes, I am.
Anata-wa Smith-san-de ari-masen ka?	Aren't you Mr. Smith?
Iie, watakushi-wa Smith-de ari-masen.	No, I am not Smith.
Iie, soo-de ari-masen. Watakushi-wa Johnson-de su.	No, I am not. (No, that is not so.) I am Johnson.
Soo-de su ka?	Is that so?
Kore-wa nan'-de su ka? Kore-wa naifu-de su ka?	What is this? Is this a knife?
Hai, soo-de su.	Yes, it is.
Anata-wa otoko-de su ka?	Are you a man?
Iie, soo-de ari-masen.	No, I am not.
Soo-de su ka!	Is that so!

¹ Never say, "Watakushi-wa Smith-san-de ari-masen (or -de su.)" -San is a term of respect and it must not be used for the speaker himself. On this point -san is not an equivalent of *Mr.*, for one may say, "I am Mr. Smith."

LESSON 4

Possessive: "My book."

Examples:

Kore-wa watakushi-no hon-de su.

|
this|
my|
book|
is{ *This is my book.*{ *These are my books.*

Kore-wa watakushi-no-de su.

|
this|
mine|
is{ *This is mine.*{ *These are mine.*

Kore-wa hako-no futa-de su.

|
this|
box's|
lid|
is{ *This is the lid of the box.*{ *These are the lids of the boxes.*

Kore-wa hako-no-de su.

This is box's. (and plural)

The use of **-no** serves for both *my* and *mine*. And the same usage of **-no** can be applied to things as well as to persons, as **Kore-wa hako-no-de su**, which has no corresponding expression in English.

Complete sentences are used in illustrating the use of possessive, because it is important that a student should learn the use of words in relation to the sentence. One should learn the whole sentence as

a unit. It is not enough to know *hako-no futa*; one must be able to say "*Kore-wa hako-no-futa-de su*" in one breath.

Key Words:

-no 's, (of)

Vocabulary:

donata	who? (interrogative pronoun)
hako	box, boxes
futa	lid, lids
to	and
"pen"	pen
"inku"	ink
kimono	clothes, dress

Exercises:

Kore-wa anata-no hako-de Is this your box?
su ka?

Iie, sore-wa watakushi-no de No, that is not mine.
ari-masen.

Kore-wa hako-no futa-de su Is this the lid of a box?
ka?

Hai, soo-de su. Yes, it is.

Kore-wa donata-no hako-de Whose box is this?
su ka?

Sore-wa watakushi-no hako- That is my box.
de su.

Sore-wa donata-no-de su ka? Whose is that?

Kore-wa Smith-san-no-de su.	This is Smith's.
Kore-wa anata-no pen to inku-de su ka?	Are these your pen and ink?
Soo-de su, sore-wa wata-kushi-no-de su.	Yes, those are mine.
Sore-wa nan'-de su ka?	What is that?
Kore-wa Smith-san-no ki-mono-de su.	This is Smith's clothes.
Kore-wa pen-no hako-de su.	This is a box for the pen.
Kore-wa pen to inku-no hako-de su.	This is a box for the pen and ink.
Kore-wa pen-no hako-no futa-de su.	This is the lid of the box for the pen.
Kore-wa pen to inku-no hako-no futa-de su.	This is the lid of the box for the pen and ink.
Anata-no hako-wa kore-de su ka?	Is your box this?
Hai, watakushi-no hako-wa kore-de su.	Yes, my box is this.
Anata-no-wa kore-de su ka?	Is yours this?
Soo-de su, watakushi-no-wa kore-de su.	Yes, mine is this. ¹

¹ In the above Exercises and in the subsequent Exercises the translations for plural have been left out for the sake of simplicity.

LESSON 5

Adjectives (1): "A good book"

Example:

Kore-wa yoi hon-de su.
 | | |
 this good book is

This is a good book.
 (and plural)

In Japanese there are two kinds of adjectives—regular adjectives and noun-adjectives. The regular adjectives, which are studied in this lesson, and the verbs are the two parts of speech which have inflexions. Those inflexions will be taken up later, but it is well to notice now that the regular adjectives always end in *i* when used before nouns.

Vocabulary:

yoi	<i>good</i>
warui	<i>bad</i>
ookii	<i>big</i>
chiisai	<i>small</i>
donna	<i>what kind of?</i> (<i>donna</i> is a noun-adjective, because it ends in <i>na</i>)
"hankachi"	<i>handkerchief</i>
"teeburu"	<i>table</i>

Exercises:

Kore-wa yoi hon-de su ka?	Is this a good book?
Soo-de su, sore-wa yoi hon-de su.	Yes, that is a good book.
Iie, sore-wa yoi hon-de ari-masen.	No, that is not a good book.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Sore-wa warui-hon-de su. | That is a bad book. |
| Anata-no hon-wa warui hon-de su ka? | Is your book a bad book? |
| Iie, watakushi-no hon-wa warui hon-de ari-masen. | No, my book is not a bad book. |
| Kore-wa donna hako-de su ka? | What kind of a box is this? |
| Sore-wa ookii hako-de su. | That is a big box. |
| Kore-wa donna hako-no futa-de su ka? | What kind of a box does this lid belong to? |
| Sore-wa chiisai hako-no futa-de su. | That lid belongs to a small box. |
| Kore-wa nan'-de su ka? | What is this? |
| Sore-wa watakushi-no ookii hankachi-de su. | That is my big handkerchief. |
| Kore-wa Kiyooka-san-no chiisai hon-de su. | That is Mr. Kiyooka's little book. |
| Anata-no-wa yoi hon-de su ka? | Is yours a good book? |
| Soo-de ari-masen, watakushi-no-wa yoi hon-de ari-masen. | No, mine is not a good book. |
| Anata-no-wa donna teeburu-de su ka? | What kind of a table is yours? |
| Watakushi-no-wa ookii teeburu-de su. | Mine is a big table. |

LESSON 6

Adjectives (2): Noun-Adjectives

Example:

Kore-wa kirei-na hon-de su. *This is a pretty book.*
 | | | |
 this pretty book is
 (and plural)

Let us regard **-na** as a variation of **-no**, the possessive ending for nouns. Then, **kirei-na hon** literally means *book of beauty* or *book of prettiness*. The use of noun-adjectives is quite the same as that of the possessive case of nouns. In most cases the noun-adjectives are derivations from Chinese or other words of foreign origin while the regular adjectives are of pure Japanese origin and they have inflexions.

An English word, too, may be used as a noun-adjective, thus; *Anata-wa regular-na member-de su.* (*You are a regular member.*) This usage is sometimes used when the speaker finds that an English word is more expressive than a Japanese equivalent.

Key Word:

-na (of)

Vocabulary:

kirei-na *pretty, clean*

kitanai (a regular adjective) *ugly, dirty*

taisetsu-na	<i>precious, important</i>
-------------	----------------------------

taira-na	<i>flat, smooth</i>
----------	---------------------

“hoteru”

hotel

“shatsu”

*shirt, especially undershirt**Exercises:*

Kore-wa donna hon-de su ka?	What kind of a book is this?
Sore-wa kirei-na hon-de su.	That is a pretty book.
Kore-wa nan'-de su ka?	What is this?
Sore-wa watakushi-no tai-setsu-na hon-de su.	That is my precious book.
Kore-wa taira-na hako-de su.	That is a flat box.
Kore-wa taira-na hako-no futa-de su.	This is the lid for a flat box.
Kore-wa watakushi-no kitai-shatsu-de su.	This is my dirty undershirt.
Kore-wa watakushi-no kirei-na shatsu to kimono-de su.	This is my clean undershirt and kimono.
Kore-wa donna hoteru-de su ka?	What kind of a hotel is this?
Sore-wa ookii kirei-na hoteru-de su.	That is a big, beautiful hotel.
Anata-no-wa donna hako-de su ka?	What kind of a box is yours?
Watakushi-no-wa taira-na kirei-na hako-de su.	Mine is a flat, pretty box.
Sore-wa watakushi-no tai-setsu-na pen to inku-de su.	That is my precious pen and ink.
Kore-wa anata-no taisetsu-na shatsu-de su ka?	Is this your precious undershirt?

Sore-wa taisetsu-na shatsu- That is not a precious
de ari-masen. undershirt.

Anata-no-wa taira-na hako- Isn't yours a flat box?
de ari-masen ka?

Iie, watakushi-no-wa taira- No, mine is not a flat
na hako-de ari-masen. box.

LESSON 7

Adjectives as Predicate: "This is good"

Examples:

Kore-wa yoku ari-masu. (regular adjectives)
| | |
this good is *This is good.*

Kore-wa kirei-de su. (noun-adjectives)
| | |
this pretty is *This is pretty.*

Compare the last syllable of the regular adjective *yoku* in the above example and that of *yoi* of the Lesson 5. When an adjective is used as predicate, it ends in *ku* and when it is used before a noun, it ends in *i*. This change in the end syllable is what we call the inflexion. In colloquial Japanese the inflexion of adjectives is "*i, ku, kere,*" and there is no irregular inflexion. The last ending, *kere*, will be taken up later in Lesson 51.

The regular-adjectives are called in the form with the *i*-ending, as "the adjective *yoi*."

The noun-adjectives, being nouns, are treated as such when they are used as predicate. Compare the following two sentences.

Kore-wa hon-de su.

This is a book.

Kore-wa kirei-de su.

This is pretty.

(This is a beauty.)

The negative forms, as they may be expected, are as follows:

Kore-wa yoku ari-masen.

This is not good.

Kore-wa kirei-de ari-masen.

This is not pretty.

Key Words:

-wa

—ku ari-masu

—ku ari-masen

-de su

-de ari-masen

Vocabulary:

hiroi *wide, large in area*

semai *narrow, small in area*

rippa-na *magnificent, fine*

heya *room*

Inflexion of Adjectives:

yoi

yoku

yokere

warui

waruku

warukere

ookii

ookiku

ookikere

chiisai

chiisaku

chiisakere

kitanai

kitanaku

kitanakere

hiroi	hiroku	hirokere
semai	semaku	semakere
taisetsu-na	taisetsu-de	
taira-na	taira-de	
rippa-na	rippa-de	

Exercises:

Kore-wa hiroi heya-de su ka?	Is this a large room?
Kore-wa hiroku ari-masu ka?	Is this wide?
Soo-de su, kore-wa hiroi heya-de su.	Yes, this is a large room?
Soo-de su, kore-wa hiroku ari-masu.	Yes, this is wide.
Iie, kore-wa hiroi heya-de ari-masen.	No, this is not a large room.
Iie, kore-wa hiroku ari-masen.	No, this is not wide.
Sore-wa rippa-na heya-de su ka?	Is that a fine room?
Anata-no heya-wa rippa-de su ka?	Is your room fine?
Watakushi-no heya-wa rippa-de su.	My room is fine.
Watakushi-no-wa rippa-na heya-de su.	Mine is a fine room.
Watakushi-no heya-wa rippa-de ari-masen.	My room is not fine.
Watakushi-no-wa semai semai heya-de su.	Mine is a narrow, narrow (very narrow) room.

Hoteru-no heya-wa ookii Are the rooms of the
 heya-de su ka? hotel big rooms?

Iie, hoteru-no-wa kitanai No, those of the hotel
 semai heya-de su. are miserable, nar-
 row rooms.

LESSON 8

-WA and -GA

Examples:

Kore-wa watakushi-no-de su. *This is mine.*
 | | |
 this mine is

Kore-ga watakushi-no-de su. *This is mine. (This*
 | | | *particular one is*
 this mine is *mine.)*

There are two endings for subject, **-wa** and **-ga**, of which **-wa** is ordinarily used. **-Ga** is used when the speaker wishes to put particular emphasis on the subject, as "This is mine and not that," or when he points out a particular one out of many. Note the following sentences:

Kore-wa anata-no-de su ka? *Is this yours?*

Hai, kore-wa watakushi-no-de su. *Yes, this is mine.*

Note: In Lesson 7 strictly grammatical expressions are given, but in actual speech a corrupted form, such as "Kore-wa yoi-de su," is currently used. However, a student should begin with the strictly correct form.

Kore-ga anata-no-de su ka?

Is this one yours?

Hai, kore-ga watakushi-no-de su.

Yes, this one is mine.

Dore-ga anata-no-de su ka?

Which is yours?

Kore-ga watakushi-no-de su.

This one is mine.

In negative expressions **-wa** is generally used, because there is usually no emphasis on the subject.

Kore-wa anata-no-de ari-masen ka?

Isn't this yours?

Iie, kore-wa watakushi-no-de ari-masen.

No, this is not mine.

Kore-ga anata-no-de su ka?

Is this one yours?

Iie, kore-wa watakushi-no-de ari-masen.

No, this is not mine.

The distinction between **-wa** and **-ga** is one of the subtleties of the Japanese language. Their correct usage is a measure of skill in the language, but it is not absolutely essential in the communication of ideas. Therefore, if it is difficult, do not let it trouble you. Simply remember that **-ga** is a variation of **-wa** and because of its stronger tone, gives particular emphasis to the subject to which it is attached.

Key Words:

- | | |
|------------|--|
| -wa | ending for subject in ordinary statement |
| -ga | emphatic ending for subject |

Vocabulary:

dore (pronoun)	<i>which? which one?</i>
kono (adjective)	<i>this</i>
sono (adjective)	<i>that</i>
enpitsu	<i>pencil</i>

Attention is called to the distinction between **kono**, **sono** and **kore**, **sore**, because they are represented by the same English words, *this* and *that*. **Kono** and **sono** are always used with a noun, as **kono hon** or **sono hon** (*this book* or *that book*), but **kore** and **sore** are pronouns, always used independently, as **Kore-wa hon-de su** (*This is a book*).

Exercises:

Dore-ga anata-no enpitsu-de su ka? Which is your pencil?

Kore-ga anata-no enpitsu-de su ka? Is this one your pencil?

Soo-de su, kore-ga wata-kushi-no-de su. Yes, this one is mine.

Iie, kore-wa watakushi-no enpitsu-de ari-masen. No, this is not my pencil.

Kono hon-wa taisetsu-de su ka? Is this book important?

Kono hon-ga taisetsu-na hon-de su ka? Is this the important book?

Soo-de su, kono hon-ga taisetsu-na hon-de su. Yes, this book is the important book.

Dore-ga anata-no taisetsu-na hon-de su ka?	Which is your precious book?
Kono hon-ga sore-de su.	This book is it.
Dore-ga Smith-san-de su ka?	Which is Mr. Smith?
Kono otoko-ga Smith-de su.	This man is Smith.
Anata-wa Smith-san-de su ka?	Are you Mr. Smith? (Is your name Smith?)
Hai, watakushi-wa Smith-de su.	Yes, I am Mr. Smith. (My name is Smith.)
Anata-ga Smith-san-de su ka?	Are you Mr. Smith?
Hai, watakushi-ga Smith-de su.	Yes, I (and no one else) am Smith.
Iie, watakushi-wa Smith-de ari-masen. Kore-ga Smith-san-de su.	No, I am not Mr. Smith. This is Mr. Smith.

LESSON 9

Sentences of the Type "Here is a book."

This is a book and its variations have been studied for the last eight lessons. Let us now take up another type of expressions which point out the position of things.

Examples:

Koko-ni hon-ga ari-masu.	<i>Here is a book.</i>
<div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> here </div> <div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> book </div> <div style="display: inline-block; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;"> is </div>	<i>Here are some books.</i>

Hon-wa koko-ni ari-masu. *The book is here.*¹

Substituting **heya** (*room*) for **koko**, one may say

Hon-wa heya-ni ari-masu. *The book is in the room.*

Also, one may say

Hon-ga ari-masu. *There is a book.*

The word *there* has no significant meaning. Therefore it is natural that a corresponding word is lacking in the Japanese.

Key Words:

-wa	ending for subject
-ga	ending for subject
-ni	<i>in, on, at, to</i>
ari-masu	<i>is, are</i>

Vocabulary:

koko	<i>here</i>
soko	<i>there</i>
doko	<i>where?</i>
tana	<i>shelf</i>
heya	<i>room</i>

Note that the syllable of **do** usually denotes a question, as it is seen in **doko** (*where*), **dore** (*which*), **donna** (*what kind of*), **donata** (*who*). Also, the syllable of **ko** and **so** denote something near and something far, as **koko** (*here*), **kore** (*this*), **kono** (*this*) and **soko** (*there*), **sore** (*that*), **sono** (*that*).

¹ -*Wa* is used when an idea of "in the case of" or "if it is about—" is implied. Therefore, *Hon-wa koko-ni ari-masu* implies "If it is about the book you want to know, it is here."

Exercises:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Koko-ni nani-ga ari-masu ka? | What is here? |
| Soko-ni hon to hako-ga ari-masu. | There are a book and a box there. |
| Kono heya-ni nani to nani-ga ari-masu ka? | What and what are in this room? |
| Kono heya-ni teeburu to tana-ga ari-masu. | In this room there are a table and a shelf. |
| Tana-ni nani-ga ari-masu ka? | What is on the shelf? |
| Pen to inku-ga ari-masu. | There are a pen and ink. |
| Hon-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka? | Where is the book? |
| Hon-wa tana-ni ari-masu. | The book is on the shelf. |
| Watakushi-no hon-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka? | Where is my book? |
| Anata-no kirei-na hon-wa hako-ni ari-masu. | Your pretty book is in the box. |
| Tana-ni donna hako-ga ari-masu ka? | What kind of a box is there on the shelf? |
| Tana-ni ookii hako-ga ari-masu. | There is a big box on the shelf. |

LESSON 10

Here is a man.

Examples:

Koko-ni hito-ga i-masu.	{ Here is a man.
here man is	{ Here are several men.
Hito-ga i-masu.	{ There is a man.
man is	{ There are several men.

Sono hito-wa heya-ni i-masu.

That man (he) is in the room.

The Japanese language makes distinction between living things and inanimate things. For men, animals and general living things **i-masu** is used while for things which do not move—including trees and plants—**ari-masu** is used. This distinction applies in sentences of the above type only. In *This is a book* and *This is a man*, **ari-masu** is invariably used, as **Kore-wa hon-de ari-masu** (**hon-de su**) and **Kore-wa hito-de ari-masu** (**hito-de su**).

Key Words:

-wa, -ga	endings for subject
-ni	<i>in, on, at, to</i>
i-masu	<i>is, are, am</i>
i-masen	<i>is not, are not, am not</i>

Vocabulary:

hito	<i>person, man, woman</i>
sono hito	<i>he, she, that person</i>
inu	<i>dog</i>

mushi	<i>insect, worm</i>
ki	<i>tree</i>
niwa	<i>garden, yard</i>

The proper Japanese word for *he* is *kare*, but it is not generally used in daily speech as being too literary. **Sono hito** (*that person*) is used instead for both *he* and *she*.

Exercises :

Koko-ni donata-ga i-masu ka?	Who is here?
Koko-ni Smith-san-ga i-masu.	Here is Mr. Smith.
Soko-ni nani-ga i-masu ka?	What is there?
Soko-ni inu-ga i-masu.	A dog is there.
Inu-wa doko-ni i-masu ka?	Where is the dog?
Inu-wa niwa-ni i-masu.	The dog is in the yard.
Ki-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka?	Where is the tree?
Ki-wa niwa-ni ari-masu.	The tree is in the garden.
Niwa-ni donata-ga i-masu ka?	Who is in the garden?
Niwa-ni Kiyooka-san-ga i-masu.	There is Mr. Kiyooka in the garden.
Satoo-san-wa Tōkyō-ni i-masu ka?	Is Mr. Satoo in Tokyo? (Does Mr. Satoo live in Tokyo?)
Iie, Satoo-san-wa Tōkyō-ni i-masen.	No, Mr. Satoo is not in Tokyo. (Mr. Satoo does not live in Tokyo.)
Sono hito-wa Yokohama-ni i-masu ka?	Is he in Yokohama?
Soo-de su.	He is.

LESSON 11

In, On, Under

Examples:

Tana-no ue-ni hon-ga ari-masu.

shelf	on	book	is

There is a book on the shelf. (and plural)

Hon-wa tana-no ue-ni ari-masu.

book	shelf	on	is

The book is on the shelf. (and plural)*Key Words:*

-wa, -ga	endings for subject
-no ue-ni	on, upon
ari-masu	is, are (for inanimate things)
i-masu	is, are, am (for living things)

-No ue-ni is exactly the English *on top of* arranged backwards.

-no	ue	-ni
of	top	on

The same is true with -no naka-ni and -no shita-ni. As -ni alone may stand for *in* or *on*, it depends upon the speaker's wish for preciseness to say either Tana-ni hon-ga ari-masu or Tana-no ue-ni hon-ga ari-masu.

Vocabulary:

-no naka-ni	<i>in, inside</i>
-------------	-------------------

-no shita-ni	<i>under</i>
todana	<i>closet, cupboard</i>
honbako	<i>bookcase</i>
yuka	<i>floor</i>

Todana has been changed for euphonic reasons from **to-tana** (*door-shelf*) or *doored shelves*. The same is true with **honbako** which comes from **hon-hako**, *book-box*.

Exercises:

Anata-wa doko-ni i-masu ka?	Where are you?
Watakushi-wa heya-no naka-ni i-masu.	I am in the room.
Hon-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka?	Where is the book?
Hon-wa honbako-no naka-ni ari-masu.	The book is in the book-case.
Ki-no shita-ni nani-ga i-masu ka?	What is under the tree?
Ki-no shita-ni inu-ga i-masu.	Under the tree there is a dog?
Yuka-no ue-ni nani-ga ari-masu ka?	What is on the floor?
Yuka-no ue-ni todana to honbako-ga ari-masu.	On the floor there are a cupboard and a book-case.
Inu-wa niwa-ni i-masu ka?	Is the dog in the yard?
Iie, inu-wa niwa-ni i-masen. Inu-wa heya-no naka-ni i-masu.	No, the dog is not in the yard. The dog is in the room.
Sono hon-wa honbako-ni ari-masu ka?	Is that book in the book-case?

Iie, sono hon-wa honbako-no naka-ni ari-masen. Sore-wa tana-no ue-ni ari-masu. No, that book is not in the bookcase. It is on the shelf.

Sono hito-wa niwa-ni i-masu ka? Is he in the garden?

Iie, sono hito-wa niwa-ni i-masen. Sono hito-wa anata-no heya-ni i-masu. No, he is not in the garden. He is in your room.

LESSON 12

Behind, In Front of, Etc.

Example:

Hako-no mae-ni hon-ga ari-masu.

There is a book in front of the box.

This is continuation of the last lesson. There is little to explain.

Key Words:

-wa, -ga	endings for subject
-no mae-ni	<i>in front of</i>
ari-masu	<i>is, are</i>
i-masu	<i>is, are, am</i>

Mae, ushiro, ue, shita and all the words of the kind are nouns, and they can be used as such. Note the following sentences.

Kore-ga mae-de su.

This is the front.

Kore-ga hako-no mae-de su.

This is the front of the box.

Hako-wa migi-ni ari-masu.

The box is on the right.

Vocabulary:

-no mae-ni	<i>in front of</i>
-no ushiro-ni	<i>behind</i>
-no migi-ni	<i>at the right side of</i>
-no hidari-ni	<i>at the left side of</i>
-no soba-ni	<i>at the side of, near</i>

Exercises:

Anata-wa doko-ni i-masu ka? Where are you?

Watakushi-wa ki-no soba-ni i-masu. I am by the tree.

Teeburu-no ushiro-ni nani-ga ari-masu ka? What is behind the table?

Teeburu-no ushiro-ni to-dana-ga ari-masu. Behind the table is a cupboard.

Anata-no migi-ni nani-ga ari-masu ka? What is on your right?

Watakushi-no migi-ni hon-bako-ga ari-masu. There is a bookcase on my right.

Inu-wa anata-no soba-ni i-masu ka? Is the dog at your side?

Iie, inu-wa koko-ni i-masen. No, the dog is not here.

Teeburu-no ue-ni naifu to fooku-ga ari-masu. There are knives and forks on the table.

Naifu-wa migi-ni ari-masu.	The knife is on the
Fooku-wa hidari-ni ari-	right. The fork is on
masu. Chiisai naifu-wa	the left. The small
mae-ni ari-masu.	knife is at the front.
Kore-wa honbako-no mae-de	This is the front of the
su. Kore-ga ushiro-de su.	bookcase. This is the
Mae-wa kirei-de su. Ushiro-	back.
wa kirei-de ari-masen.	The front is pretty. The
Kore-ga watakushi-no migi-	back is not pretty.
de su.	This is my right.
Kore-ga watakushi-no hidari-	This is my left.
de su.	
Kore-ga kono hako-no ue to	This is the top of the
shita-de su.	box and the bottom.
Kono hako-no naka-wa kirei-	The inside of this box
de su.	is clean.

LESSON 13

Negation of Adjectives: "Unimportant"

Example:

Kore-wa taisetsu-de-nai hon-de su.

this	unimportant	book	is

This is an unimportant book.

Much like in English there are two ways to express the negation of adjectives. The above example shows one of the ways, and the other is by the use of negation with the verb as it was studied in Lessons 5 and 6:—

Kore-wa taisetsu-na hon-de ari-masen.

This is not an important book.

The use of *un* in English is limited to a few adjectives, but in Japanese *-de-nai* can be applied to any noun-adjectives.

Nai is an adjective and it has an inflexion of a regular adjective.

taisetsu-de-nai taisetsu-de-naku taisetsu-de-nakere
unimportant

kirei-de-nai kirei-de-naku kirei-de-nakere
not pretty

taira-de-nai taira-de-naku taira-de-nakere
not flat

etc.

The regular adjectives also can be turned negative in very much the same way:

Examples:

Kore-wa ookiku-nai hako-de su.

this	big	not	box	is

This is not a big box.

Kore-wa ookii hako-de ari-masen.

This is not a big box.

The inflexion of *nai* when used with regular adjectives is as follows—it is much like that when used with the noun-adjectives:

ookiku-nai <i>not big</i>	ookiku-naku	ookiku-nakere
chiisaku-nai <i>not small</i>	chiisaku-naku	chiisaku-nakere
yoku-nai <i>not good</i>	yoku-naku	yoku-nakere
waruku-nai <i>not bad</i>	waruku-naku	waruku-nakere
takaku-nai <i>not high</i>	takaku-naku	takaku-nakere

etc.

The distinction between the two ways of negation is rather subtle, but it is much like in English as one may sense the difference between "This is not important" and "This is unimportant." In interrogative form the distinction is clearer. "Kore-wa ookiku-nai hako-de su ka?" means simply "Is this a small box?" But "Kore-wa ookii hako-de arimasen ka?" means "Isn't this a big box?" implying something more than a simple question. However, this kind of subtleties are beyond our scope for the moment.

Key Words:

-nai, -naku	<i>not, un—, in—</i> (used after regular adjectives)
-de-nai, -de-naku	<i>not, un—, in—</i> (used after noun-adjectives)

Vocabulary:

shinsetsu-na	<i>kind</i>
rikoo-na	<i>wise, intelligent</i>
takai	<i>high, expensive</i>
mono	<i>thing</i>

Exercises:

Sore-wa shinsetsu-na hito-de su ka?	Is that a kind man?
Sore-wa shinsetsu-na hito-de ari-masen.	That is not a kind man.
Sore-wa shinsetsu-de-nai hito-de su.	That is an unkind man.
Mushi-wa rikoo-na mono-de su ka?	Is an insect an intelligent thing?
Mushi-wa rikoo-de-nai mono-de su.	An insect is not an intelligent thing.
Koko-ni takai hon-ga ari-masu.	Here is an expensive book.
Koko-ni takaku-nai hon-ga ari-masu.	Here is an inexpensive book.
Takaku-nai mono-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka?	Where are the inexpensive things?
Takaku-nai mono-wa koko-ni ari-masu.	Inexpensive things are here.
Koko-ni takaku-nai mono-wa ari-masen.	There is no inexpensive thing here.

LESSON 14

Compound Sentences with BUT and AND

Examples:

Kono inu-wa kirei-de su, soshite sono inu-wa rikoo-de su.

This dog is pretty, and that dog is clever.

Kono inu-wa kirei-de su, soshite rikoo-de su.

This dog is pretty, and (he) is clever.

Compound sentences are nothing more than two or more simple sentences connected together with *soshite* (*and*) or *keredomo* (*but*). However, when the same subject is repeated in the second clause, it is usually understood. Of course, the subject may be repeated if the speaker wishes to place special emphasis on it, as:

Kono inu-wa kirei-de su, soshite kono inu-wa rikoo-de su.

This dog is pretty, and also this dog is clever.

Key Words:

soshite *and, also*

keredomo *but*

Soshite is used in connecting clauses only; for connecting words *to* is used, as *pen to inku* (*pen and ink*). See Lesson 4.

Vocabulary:

uchi *house, home*

gakkoo *school*

taihen
"desuku"

very, unusually
desk

Exercises:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Kore-wa kirei-na inu-de su,
keredomo rikoo-de ari-
masen. | This is a pretty dog, but
he is not clever. |
| Kore-wa ookii uchi-de su,
soshite taihen kirei-de su. | This is a big house, and
it is very pretty. |
| Kono uchi-wa ookiku ari-
masen, keredomo taihen
yoi uchi-de su. | This house is not big,
but it is a very good
house. |
| Koko-ni watakushi-no desu-
ku-ga ari-masu, soshite
soko-ni anata-no-ga ari-
masu. | Here is my desk, and
there is yours. |
| Anata-no gakkoo-wa donna
gakkoo-de su ka? | What kind of a school
is your school? |
| Watakushi-no gakkoo-wa
taihen chiisai gakkoo-de
su, keredomo taihen rippa-
de su. | My school is a very
small school, but it is
very fine. |
| Anata-no desuku-wa doko-
ni ari-masu ka? | Where is your desk? |
| Watakushi-no desuku-wa
koko-ni ari-masen, kere-
domo uchi-ni ari-masu. | My desk is not here, but
it is at home (in my
house). |
| Kimono to shatsu-wa doko-
ni ari-masu ka? | Where are the dress and
the shirt? |
| Kimono-wa todana-ni ari-
masu, soshite shatsu-wa
tana-no ue-ni ari-masu. | The dress is in the closet
and the shirt is on the
shelf. |

Hon to pen to inku-wa doko-
ni ari-masu ka?

Where are the book and
the pen and the ink?

Hon-wa honbako-ni ari-ma-
su, soshite pen to inku-wa
desuku-no ue-ni ari-masu.

The book is in the book-
case, and the pen and
ink are on the desk.

Watakushi-no uchi to anata-
no uchi-wa gakkoo-no mae-
ni ari-masu, soshite Smith-
san-no uchi-wa gakkoo-no
ushiro-ni ari-masu.

My house and your
house are in front of
the school, and Smith's
house is at the back of
the school.

LESSON 15

Ari-masu and I-masu

Examples:

Koko-ni hito-ga i-masu.

Here is a person.

Kono hito-wa ookiku ari-masu. *This person is big.*

The distinction between **ari-masu** and **i-masu** has been studied already (Lesson 10). The purpose of this lesson is to remind the students that in descriptive expressions **ari-masu** is used for both animate and inanimate things. It is convenient to remember that **i-masu** is used where the meaning of "to stay" is implied. For instance, *Here is a person* can imply that the person stays here of his own accord, and **i-masu** is used. In **Koko-ni hon-ga ari-masu** the book does not stay here—it is here, because it was placed here—and **ari-masu** is used. In **Kono hito-wa ookiku ari-masu** the subject is an animate thing but there is

no implication of staying; it is a simple statement that the person is big, and **ari-masu** is used.

Note the special use of **i-masu** in the following sentences:

Kono hito-wa kirei-de i-masu.

This person is still pretty. (This person stays pretty).

Kono hito-wa kirei-de su (ari-masu).

This person is pretty.

We shall study the use of **i-masu** further in the lessons on Progressive Form (Lesson 18).

Vocabulary:

Nippon	<i>Japan</i>
Nippon-no	<i>of Japan, Japanese</i>
mado	<i>window</i>
tatami	<i>reed mat</i>
tsukue	<i>table, desk</i>
hibachi	<i>fire brazier</i>
itsumo	<i>always</i>
shooji	<i>paper door, with single layer of light paper</i>

Exercises:

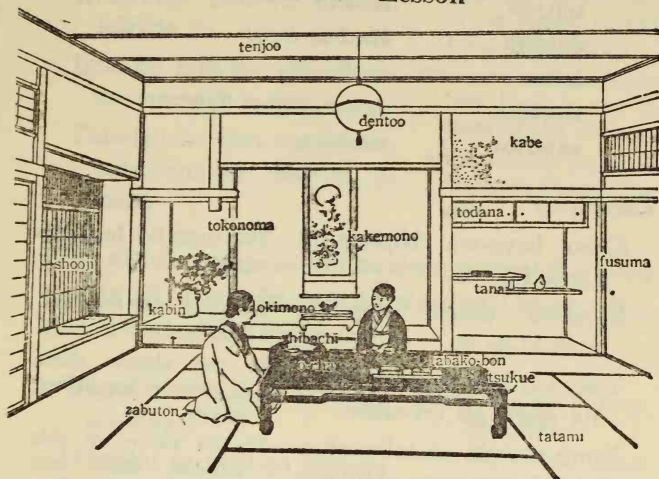
(See the illustration for Lesson 16)

Kore-wa rippa-na heya-de su.	This is a fine room.
Kore-wa rippa-na Nippon-no heya-de su.	This is a fine Japanese room.
Heya-no hidari-ni mado-ga ari-masu, soshite mado-no tana-ni hako-ga ari-masu.	There is a window to the left of the room, and on the shelf of the window there is a box.

- Migi-ni tana-ga ari-masu,
soshite tana-no ue-ni chii-
sai todana-ga ari-masu. To the right there is a
shelf, and above the
shelf there is a small
closet.
- Yuka-no ue-ni nani-ga ari-
masu ka? What is on the floor?
- Nippon-no heya-no yuka-no
ue-ni itsumo tatami-ga
ari-masu. Over the floor of a Japa-
nese room there is
tatami always.
- Kirei-na tatami-wa yoi
mono-de su. Clean tatami is a good
thing (to look at).
- Kirei-de-nai tatami-wa yoku-
nai mono-de su. Unclean tatami is not a
good thing (to look at).
- Tatami-no ue-ni nani to
nani-ga ari-masu ka? What (and what) are on
the floor?
- Tsukue to hibachi-ga ari-
masu. There are a table and a
fire brazier.
- Kore-wa rippa-na ookii tsu-
kue-de su, keredomo hiba-
chi-wa rippa-de ari-masen. This is a fine big table,
but the fire brazier is
not fine.
- Hibachi-no soba-ni hito-ga
i-masu. There is a person (or
persons) by the fire
brazier.
- Sono hito-wa kirei-de su ka? Is that person (she)
pretty?
- Soo-de su, sono hito-wa
itsumo kirei-de i-masu,
soshite shinsetsu-de su. Yes, she is always pret-
ty, and kind.
- Mado-ni shooji-ga ari-masu. There are paper doors
in the window.
- Kore-wa chiisai shooji-de su. These are small paper
doors.
- Shooji-wa hako-no ushiro-ni
ari-masu. The paper doors are
behind the box.

LESSON 16

Review Lesson



Zashiki

Vocabulary:

zashiki

parlour

tokonoma

alcove (like the mantel-piece
tokonoma gives beauty and
formality to a room)

kakemono

hanging scroll

okimono

an ornament (*oki* = *to set*, *mo-*
no = *thing*)

kabin

flower vase

o-kyaku

guest (*o-* is an honorific)

o-cha	<i>tea (o- is an honorific)</i>
tabako-bon	<i>tobacco tray</i>
tenjoo	<i>ceiling</i>
dentoo	<i>electric light</i>
kabe	<i>wall</i>
fusuma	<i>heavy paper door</i>
zabuton	<i>cushion</i>

Exercises:

Kono heya-wa Nippon-no zashiki-de su.	This room is a Japanese parlour.
Kore-wa taihen rippa-na zashiki-de su.	This is a very fine parlour.
Tokonoma-ni itsumo kirei-na mono ga ari-masu.	In the alcove there is always something pretty.
Kono zashiki-no tokonoma-ni kakemono to okimono-ga ari-masu.	In the alcove of this parlour there are hanging scroll and an ornament.
Sono kakemono-wa taihen kirei-de su, soshite rippa-de su.	That hanging scroll is very pretty, and fine.
Okimono-wa taihen rippa-de su, keredomo ookiku ari-masen.	The ornament is very fine, but it is not large.
Hidari-ni taihen ookii rippa-na kabin-ga ari-masu.	On the left there is a very large and fine flower vase.
Tokonoma-no mae-ni hito-ga i-masu.	In front of the alcove there is a person.
Sono hito-wa o-kyaku-de su.	That person (she) is a guest.

O-kyaku-wa itsumo tokonoma-no mae-ni i-masu.	A guest is always in front of the alcove.
Hidari-no hito-wa uchi-no hito-de su.	The person on the left is the person of the house (the host).
Uchi-no hito-wa tokonoma-no mae-ni i-masen.	The person of the house (the host) is not in front of the alcove.
Taisetsu-na hito-wa itsumo tokonoma-no mae-ni i-masu.	An important person is always in front of the alcove.

(The above sentences will be more natural if a word for "to sit" could be used in place of *i-masu*. But that is beyond our scope now.)

O-kyaku-no mae-ni o-cha-ga ari-masu.	There is a tea in front of the guest.
O-kyaku to uchi-no hito-no mae-ni o-cha-ga ari-masu.	In front of the guest and the host there are some teas.
O-cha to tabako-bon-wa tsukue-no ue-ni ari-masu.	The tea and the tobacco tray are on the table.
Kono heya-no mono-wa rippa-de su.	The things in this room are fine.
Kono zashiki-wa itsumo kirei-de su.	This parlour is always clean.

LESSON 17

Sentences of the type "I open a box."

Examples:

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-masu.

|
I|
box|
open*I open a box.*

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-masen.

I do not open a box.

Now that we have practically exhausted all the variations of the types of sentences "This is a book" and "There is a book," we are turning to another type which expresses actions.

Key Words:

-wa, -ga	endings for subject
-wo	ending for object
-masu	(do), an auxiliary verb

-Masu has been explained as an auxiliary verb which has a usage analogous to that of the English *do* (Lesson 3). However, **-masu** is used to give a certain respectfulness to the expression while *do* is usually employed in giving emphasis, as in "I do open a box." In Japanese there is a more blunt way of expressing the same idea without the use of **-masu** which will be taken up in Lesson 40.

Vocabulary:

ake	<i>open</i>
shime	<i>close</i>

shi	<i>do</i> (a verb)
yomi	<i>read</i>
shinbun	<i>newspaper</i>

Exercises:

Anata-wa nani-wo ake-masu ka?	What do you open?
Watakushi-wa hon-wo ake-masu.	I open a book.
Anata-wa nani-wo shi-masu ka?	What do you do?
Watakushi-wa hon-wo ake-masu, soshite sore-wo yomi-masu.	I open a book and read it.
Sono hito-wa shinbun-wo yomi-masu ka?	Does he read a newspaper?
Hai, sono hito-wa itsumo shinbun-wo yomi-masu.	Yes, he always reads newspaper.
Watakushi-no heya-ni hon-ga ari-masu, keredomo watakushi-wa sore-wo yomi-masen.	There are some books in my room, but I do not read them.
Anata-wa mado-wo shime-masu.	You close the window.
Watakushi-wa mado-no shooji-wo shime-masu.	I close the paper door of the window.
Kono hito-wa nani-wo shi-masu ka?	What does this man do?
Kono hito-wa hon-wo yomi-masu, keredomo shinbun-wo yomi-masen.	He reads books, but he does not read newspapers.

LESSON 18

Progressive Form: "I am opening a box."

Examples:

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-masu.

I	box	opening	am

I am opening a box.

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-masen.

I am not opening a box.

It is interesting to see that both English and Japanese make use of the verb *to be* (i-masu) in forming the progressive. However, the fundamental idea is different. Ake-te-i-masu literally means *open and be*, or *open and stay opening*, the word *te* being a connective *and*. Therefore, in ake-te-i-masu there is no idea of the progression of action, rather it denotes staying in the same condition. In certain cases, such as with *mochi* (*to have*) the Japanese progressive form cannot be translated into English progressive form:—

Watakushi-wa hon-wo motte-i-masu.

I have a book.

Motte-i-masu is a contraction of *mochi-te-i-masu* which does not mean *I am having a book* or *I am in the process of acquiring a book*, but it means *I possess a book and I stay so*. A student should remember the difference, but in majority of cases the progressive form of one language can be turned right into that of the other.

Key Words:

-te-i-masu	<i>is, are, am —ing</i>
-te-i-masen	<i>is, are, am, not —ing</i>

Note that -te-i-masu is used for both animate and inanimate things.

Vocabulary:

mi	<i>see</i>
mochi (motte-i-masu)	<i>have</i>
tachi (tatte-i-masu)	<i>stand</i>
suwari (suwatte-i-masu)	<i>sit</i>
yomi (yonde-i-masu)	<i>read</i>

The last syllable of the verbs are often euphonically contracted when they are followed by -te-i-masu. The contracted forms are printed in the parenthesis.

Exercises:

Anata-wa mado-wo ake-te-i-masu ka?	Are you opening the window?
Hai, watakushi-wa mado-wo ake-te-i-masu.	Yes, I am opening the window.
Iie, watakushi-wa mado-wo ake-te-i-masen.	No, I am not opening the window.
Watakushi-wa sore-wo shi-me-te-i-masu.	I am closing it.
Anata-wa nani-wo shi-te-i-masu ka?	What are you doing?
Watakushi-wa shinbun-wo mi-te-i-masu.	I am looking at the newspaper.

Watakushi-wa hon-wo yon-de-i-masu.	I am reading a book.
Anata-wa soko-ni nani-wo motte-i-masu ka?	What have you there?
Watakushi-wa koko-ni hon-wo motte-i-masu.	I have a book here.
Niwa-ni ookii ki-ga tatte-i-masu.	A big tree stands in the garden.
Ki-no shita-ni inu-ga tatte-i-masu.	A dog is standing under the tree.
Watakushi-wa inu-no soba-ni suwatte-i-masu.	I am sitting by the dog.
Watakushi-wa tachi-masu, soshite anata-wa suwari-masu.	I stand up and you sit down.
Watakushi-wa tatte-i-masu, soshite anata-wa suwatte-i-masu.	I am standing and you are sitting.

LESSON 19

Past Tense with -Masu

Examples:

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-mashita.

I

box

opened

I opened a box.

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-masen-deshita.

I did not open a box.

In the above examples the past tense and its negation are indicated by the inflexion of **masu**. The verb **ake** has its own past tense and other forms which will have to be studied later (Lesson 40), but for the present we shall limit our scope to the above type which is respectful and safe for all persons to use. Also, it is very convenient as the knowledge of the inflexion of **masu** alone enables one to make use of all the Japanese verbs in simple expressions.

Just as **-de ari-masu** is contracted into **-de su**, its past form **-de ari-mashita** is contracted to **-de shita** (*was, were*) in daily speech. Its negative form is not contracted—**-de ari-masen-deshita** (*was not, were not*).

Key Words:

-mashita	suffix for past tense(<i>did</i>)
-masen-deshita	<i>did not</i>
-de shita (-de ari-mashita)	<i>was, were</i>
-de ari-masen-deshita	<i>was not, were not</i>

Vocabulary:

ki	<i>come</i>
-kara	<i>from, since</i>
kinoo	<i>yesterday</i>
itsu	<i>when?</i>

Exercises:

Anata-wa mado-wo ake-	Did you open the win-
mashita ka?	dow?
Lie, watakushi-wa mado-wo	No, I did not open the
ake-masen-deshita.	window.

Anata-wa shinbun-wo yomi-mashita ka?	Did you read the newspaper?
Hai, watakushi-wa shinbun-wo yomi-mashita.	Yes, I read the newspaper.
Sore-wa yoi shinbun-de shita ka?	Was it a good newspaper?
Soo-de su, sore-wa yoi shinbun-deshita.	Yes, it was a good newspaper.
Iie, sore-wa yoi shinbun-de ari-masen-deshita.	No, it was not a good newspaper.
Sono hon-wa honbako-no naka-ni ari-mashita ka?	Was that book in the bookcase?
Sono hon-wa kinoo honbako-ni ari-mashita.	That book was in the bookcase yesterday.
Sono hon-wa kinoo honbako-ni ari-masen-deshita.	That book was not in the bookcase yesterday.
Anata-wa kinoo Tōkyō-ni i-mashita ka?	Were you in Tokyo yesterday?
Hai, watakushi-wa Tōkyō-ni i-mashita.	Yes, I was in Tokyo.
Iie, watakushi-wa Tōkyō-ni i-masen-deshita.	No, I was not in Tokyo.
Anata-wa doko-kara ki-mashita ka?	Where did you come from?
Watakushi-wa Kamakura-kara ki-mashita.	I came from Kamakura.
Anata-wa itsu ki-mashita ka?	When did you come?

Watakushi-wa kinoo ki- I came yesterday.
mashita.

Sono hito-wa itsu doko-kara When and from where
ki-mashita ka? did he come?

Sono hito-wa kinoo Yoko- He came from Yoko-
hama-kara ki-mashita. hama yesterday.

LESSON 20

Present Perfect: "I have been here since Yesterday."

Example:

Watakushi-wa kinoo-kara koko-ni i-masu.
 | | | | |
 I yesterday since here have been
I have been here since yesterday.

The classic Japanese is most complete in its tense forms, but in the modern spoken Japanese all the elaborate, but annoying, forms have been eliminated even to the extent of perfect tenses such as *have been* and *had been*. Therefore, the English perfect tenses must be expressed either by a present tense or past tense in the Japanese. Strictly speaking, the above example means *I have been here since yesterday*, and *I continue to be here*. If I am leaving or have left the place, the past tense must be used:—Watakushi-wa kinoo-kara koko-ni i-mashita.

The present perfect of other verbs than *ari-masu* and *i-masu*—e. g. *I have been reading it* or *I have read it*—will be taken up in Lesson 25.

Vocabulary:

iki	<i>go</i>
ima	<i>now</i>
-made	<i>until, as far as</i>
gakkoo	<i>school</i>

-Made and -kara are used for both time and place.
Also, -ni may be used for both time and place:

Watakushi-wa Tōkyō-ni iki-masu.

I go to Tokyo.

Watakushi-wa Tōkyō-made iki-masu.

I go as far as Tokyo.

Exercises:

Anata-wa itsu-kara koko-ni i-masu ka?	Since when have you been here?
Watakushi-wa kinoo-kara koko-ni i-masu.	I have been here since yesterday.
Anata-wa ima-made doko-ni i-mashita ka?	Where have you been until now?
Watakushi-wa ima-made uchi-ni i-mashita.	I have been home till just now.
Anata-wa itsu-made uchi-ni i-mashita ka?	Until when were you at home?
Watakushi-wa ima-made uchi-ni i-mashita.	Until just now I was in my house.
Anata-wa ima doko-ni iki- masu ka?	Where do you go now? (Where are you going now?)
Watakushi-wa ima gakkoo- ni iki-masu.	I go to school now.

Anata-wa doko-made iki-masu ka?	How far (as far as where) are you going?
Watakushi-wa gakkoo-made iki-masu.	I go as far as the school.
Anata-wa kinoo-kara doko-made yomi-mashita ka?	How far did you read since yesterday?
Watakushi-wa koko-made yomi-mashita.	I have read as far as here.
Sono hito-wa uchi-ni i-masu ka?	Is he at home?
Sono hito-wa kinoo-kara uchi-ni i-masen.	He has not been home since yesterday.

LESSON 21

“Let us open the box”

Examples:

Hako-wo ake-mashoo. *Let us open the box.*

Hako-wo ake-mashoo ka? *Shall we open the box?*

The subject is usually understood, because in this kind of expressions the subject is invariably “I” or “we,” and there is no need of mentioning it. However, in special cases it may be mentioned:

Watakushi-ga ake-mashoo.

Let ME open. (I will open it.)

Watakushi-ga ake-mashoo ka?

Shall I open it? (Do you want me to open it?)

"Let us not open the box" can not be expressed in Japanese by the negation of **mashoo**. It has to be expressed by saying, "Let us stop opening the box." This will be studied when we take up complex sentences.

Key Words:

-**mashoo** *will, shall, let us*

Vocabulary:

kai	<i>buy</i>
nori	<i>ride</i>
nomi	<i>drink</i>
mizu	<i>water</i>
densha	<i>street car (den = electric, sha = car)</i>

Exercises:

Nani-wo ake-mashoo ka?	What shall we open?
Hako-wo ake-mashoo.	Let us open the box.
Nani-wo kai-mashoo ka?	What shall we buy?
Kirei-na kimono-wo kai-mashoo.	Let us buy a pretty dress.
Doko-ni iki-mashoo ka?	Where shall we go?
Anata-no uchi-ni iki-mashoo.	Let us go to your house.
Itsu anata-no uchi-ni iki-mashoo ka?	When shall we go to your house?
Ima iki-mashoo.	Let us go now.
Nani-wo nomi-mashoo ka?	What shall we drink?
Mizu-wo nomi-mashoo ka?	Shall we drink some water?
Hai, soo shi-mashoo.	Yes, let us do so.

Ima nani-wo shi-mashoo ka?	What shall we do now?
Densha-ni nori-mashoo, so- shite uchi-ni iki-mashoo.	Let us ride in the street car, and let us go home.
Kono densha-wa doko-ni iki- masu ka?	Where does this street car go?
Kore-wa Yokohama-ni iki- masu.	This goes to Yokohama.
Kono densha-ni nori-mashoo ka?	Shall we take (ride in this street car?
Soo shi-mashoo.	Let us do so.

LESSON 22

Future

Examples:

Sono hito-ga hako-wo ake-mashoo.

He will open the box.

Sono hito-wa hako-wo ake-masen-deshoo.

He will not open the box.

Kore-wa yoi hon-de shoo (-de ari-mashoo).

This probably is a good book.

Kore-wa yoi hon-de ari-masen-deshoo.

This probably is not a good book.

-De shoo is an abbreviation of -de-ari-mashoo.

Key Words:

-mashoo

will, shall

-masen-deshoo

will not, shall not

-de shoo (-de ari-masho) *will be, shall be*

-de ari-masen-deshoo *will not be, shall not be*

The use of future form in Japanese is rather subtle and it makes one realize that a language is after all an expression of free thinking mind and that one language cannot always be translated into another by mechanical substitution of the words. Strictly speaking the spoken Japanese has no tense to correspond with the future these of the European languages.

Mashoo is a form of the auxiliary verb **masu** which indicates uncertainty or desire. And because uncertainty and desire are usually concerned with the future occurrences, this **mashoo** is generally called the future form of **masu**. **Mashoo** expresses the idea more akin to the subjunctive mood than future tense.

Therefore, when speaking of opening a box, a student should not concern himself too much with the time of opening. Rather, he should think and feel, as the Japanese do, whether it should be expressed as a fixed action or uncertain action or an action to be desired. If it is fixed and certain, use present tense:

Sono hito-ga ashita sono hako-wo ake-masu.

He opens the box tomorrow.

If there is some uncertainty or his willingness about opening it:

Sono hito-ga sono hako-wo ake-mashoo.

He will open the box.

If the desire to open is the chief thought:

Kono hako-wo ima ake-mashoo.

Let us open the box now.

Kono hako-wo ashita ake-mashoo.

Let us open the box tomorrow.

The Japanese people feel that a show of uncertainty in speech is more respectful than a blunt, direct expression. Therefore, **mashoo** and **de shoo** are often used for such purpose:

Kore-wa yoi hon-de su ka?

Is this a good book? (a direct question)

Kore-wa yoi hon-de shoo ka?

Is this a good book? (a respectful inquiry)

Kore-wa yoi hon-de su.

This is a good book. (an uncompromising answer)

Kore-wa yoi hon-de shoo.

This is a good book. (a modest answer)

Not only **mashoo** but many other usages of the spoken Japanese will appear strange to one who is trained in formal grammar. But if he examines closely the spoken English—especially the informal slangish English—he will find that English, too, is discarding the rule of old grammar and is somewhat approaching the free usages of the spoken Japanese.

Vocabulary:

gohan

boiled rice, also a repast

"jamu"

jam

"pan" (from Spanish)	<i>bread</i>
"bata"	<i>butter</i>
"sandowitchi"	<i>sandwich</i>
ashita	<i>tomorrow</i>

Exercises:

Sono hito-wa itsu ki-mashoo ka?	When will he come?
Sono hito-wa itsu ki-masu ka?	When does he come?
Sono hito-wa ashita ki-mashoo.	He will come tomorrow.
Sono hito-wa ashita ki-masu.	He comes tomorrow.
Kono hito-wa pan to bata-wo tabe-mashoo ka?	Will he eat bread and butter?
Hai, kono hito-wa pan to bata-wo tabe-mashoo.	Yes, he will eat bread and butter.
Kono hito-wa pan-wo tabe-masu, keredomo gohan-wo tabe-masen-de shoo.	He eats bread, but he probably will not eat rice.
Kore-wa bata-no sando-witchi-de shoo ka?	Is this butter-sandwich?
Iie, soo-de ari-masen-deshoo.	No, it is not.
Kore-wa nan'-de shoo ka?	What is this?
Sore-wa jamu-no sando-witchi-de su.	This is a jam-sandwich.
Kore-wa yoi pan-de shoo ka?	Is this a good bread?
Hai, sore-wa taihen yoi pan-de su.	Yes, that is a very good bread.

Sore-wa yoi pan-de ari- That is not a good
masen-de shoo. bread.

Sono hito-wa ashita Yoko- Will he go to Yokohama
hama-ni iki-mashoo ka? tomorrow?

Iie, sono hito-wa iki-masen- No, he will not go.
de-shoo.

LESSON 23

Progressive Form in Past and Future

Examples:

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-mashita.

I was opening the box.

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-masen-deshita.

I was not opening the box.

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-mashoo.

I will be opening the box.

Watakushi-wa hako-wo ake-te-i-masen-deshoo.

I will not be opening the box.

Key Words:

-te-i-mashita	<i>was, were —ing</i>
-te-i-masen-deshita	<i>was, were not —ing</i>
-te-i-mashoo	<i>will, shall be —ing</i>
-te-i-masen-deshoo	<i>will, shall not be —ing</i>

The Japanese progressive forms are very long and they may appear cumbersome to a new student. But they must be learned thoroughly and pronounced as if the whole strings of words were mere endings of the verb.

Vocabulary:

tori (totte-i-)	<i>take, catch</i>
kaki (kaite-i-)	<i>write</i>
tegami	<i>letter</i>
niku	<i>meat</i>

Exercises:

Anata-wa nani-wo shi-te-i-mashita ka?	What were you doing?
Watakushi-wa hon-wo yon-de-i-mashita.	I was reading a book.
Watakushi-wa hako-no futa-wo totte-i-mashita.	I was taking (off) the lid of a box.
Anata-wa ima mushi-wo totte-i-mashita ka?	Were you catching the insects just now?
Hai, watakushi-wa ki-no mushi-wo totte-i-mashita.	Yes, I was catching the insects of a tree.
Iie, watakushi-wa mushi-wo totte-i-masen-deshita.	No, I was not catching the insects.
Anata-wa nani-wo kaite-i-mashita ka?	What were you writing?
Watakushi-wa tegami-wo kaite-i-mashita.	I was writing a letter.
Anata-wa pan to niku-wo tabe-te-i-mashita ka?	Were you eating the bread and meat?
Watakushi-wa pan-wo tabe-te-i-masen-deshita, gohan to niku-wo tabe-te-i-mashita.	I was not eating the bread, I was eating the rice and the meat.

Sono hito-wa ashita nani-wo shi-te-i-mashoo ka? What will he be doing tomorrow?

Sono hito-wa uchi-ni tegami-wo kaite-i-mashoo. He will be writing a letter home.

Sono hito-wa tegami-wo kaite-i-masen-deshoo. He will not be writing a letter.

LESSON 24

Verbs in Succession

Example:

Watakushi-wa sore-wo shi-te-mi-mashoo.

I it do and see will

I will do it and see (I will try it).

The use of verbs in succession is one of the convenient peculiarities of the Japanese language. Here are some more examples:

ake-te-mi-masu *open and see—examine the inside*

ake-te-iki-masu *open and go—leave (something)
open*

motte-ki-masu *hold and come—bring*

motte-iki-masu *hold and go—take away*

itte-ki-masu *go and come—take a round trip,
have been to*

shi-te-mi-masu *do and see—try*

mi-te-mi-masu *look and see—examine*

shi-te-iki-masu *do and go—do before going*

shi-te-i-masu *do and be—be doing (progressive
form)*

The above list shows some of the more common examples, but any verbs may be put together according to necessity or speaker's desire. Sometimes three or four or five verbs may be strung along, such being the flexibility of the Japanese language. No doubt, there are briefer and more formal words to express the same ideas, but the above combinations are preferred in daily speech.

As seen in the last of the above examples, the progressive form is one of the common examples of the verbs in succession. Also, a succession of verbs may be made progressive, as:

Watakushi-wa sore-wo shi-te-mi-te-i-masu.

I am trying it.

Because the combination of verbs is to be taken as a unit, some care is necessary in translating their negative forms:

Watakushi-wa sore-wo shi-te-mi-masen-deshita.

I did not try it (I did not do it nor see about it).

Watakushi-wa sore-wo motte-ki-masen-deshita.

I did not bring it (I did not bring it, but I came.)

In the first example the negation applies to both verbs, but in the second example the negation applies to the first verb (*mochi*) only.

Vocabulary:

aruki

walk

aruite-iki- (aruki-te-iki-)

go on foot

de	<i>go out, come out</i>
de-te-iki-	<i>go out</i>
de-te-ki-	<i>come out</i>

Exercises:

Kono hako-wo ake-te-mi-mashoo ka?	Shall we open this box and see?
Hai, ake-te-mi-mashoo.	Yes, let us open it and see.
Anata-wa hon-wo motte-ki-mashita ka?	Did you bring the book?
Iie, watakushi-wa hon-wo motte-ki-masen-deshita.	No, I did not bring the book.
Kinoo anata-wa doko-ni itte-ki-mashita ka?	Where did you go yesterday.
Watakushi-wa kinoo Yokohama-ni itte-ki-mashita.	I made a trip to Yokohama yesterday.
Anata-wa gakkoo-ni nani-wo motte-iki-masu ka?	What do you take to school?
Watakushi-wa hon-wo motte-iki-masu.	I take some books with me.
Inu-wa heya-kara de-te-ki-mashita ka?	Did the dog come out of the room?
Hai, inu-wa de-te-ki-mashita, soshite niwa-ni de-te-iki-mashita.	Yes, the dog came out, and he went out to the yard.
Anata-wa aruite-ki-mashita ka?	Did you come on foot?
Soo-de su, watakushi-wa aruite-ki-mashita.	Yes, I came on foot.

Gakkoo-ni aruite-iki-ma- Let us walk to the
shoo. school.

Kono todana-wo mi-te-mi- Shall we examine this
mashoo ka? closet?

Hai, mi-te-mi-mashoo. Yes, let us examine it.

Sono hito-wa sore-wo shi-te- Did he try it?
mi-mashita ka?

Sono hito-wa ima sore-wo He is trying it now.
shi-te-mi-te-i-masu.

LESSON 25

The Perfect: "I have done it."

Example:

Watakushi-wa sore-wo shi-te-shimai-mashita.
I have done it (I finished doing it).

The spoken Japanese has no perfect tense, and the verb *shimai* (*finish*) is frequently used where perfect forms would be called for in English:—

Watakushi-wa sore-wo tabe-te-shimai-mashita.
I have eaten it up (I ate and finished it).

Sono hito-wa itte-shimai-mashita.
He has gone away.

Sono hito-wa ki-te-shimai-mashita.
He has come already.

Sono hito-wa suwatte-shimai-mashita.

He has sat down already.

Watakushi-wa sore-wo wasure-te-shimai-mashita.

I have forgotten it.

The above usage of **shimai** reminds us of the peculiar way in which the old Negroes of the southern United States employ the word "done" in their dialect. For instance: "Dey's done gone" (They have gone); "Ah done plum fergit dat" (I have plump forgotten that). I do not know how this usage came into their dialect, but it is most interesting to see that they have a very similar way of thinking and speaking as the Japanese.

Key Words:

-te-shimai-

(finish)

Vocabulary:

wasure

forget

kowashi

break

tsukuri (tsukutte-)

make

"garasu"

glass

Exercises:

Sono hito-wa doko-ni i-masu Where is he?
ka?

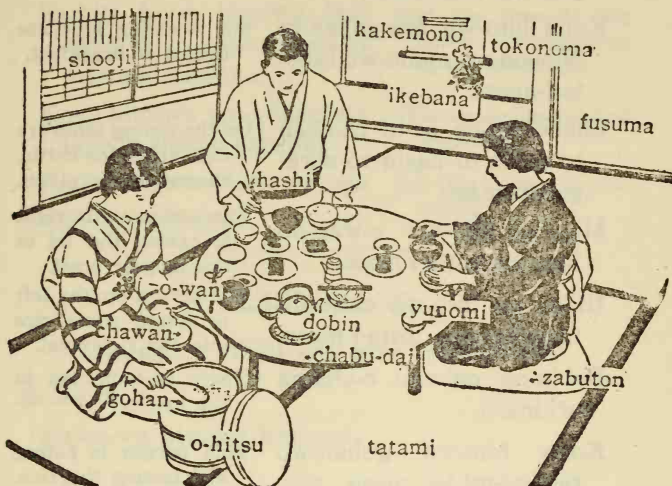
Sono hito-wa gakkoo-ni itte- He has gone away to
shimai-mashita. school.

Anata-wa watakushi-wo Have you forgotten
wasure-te-shimai-mashita me?
ka?

Hai, watakushi-wa anata-wo wasure-te-shimai-mashita.	Yes, I have forgotten you.
Iie, watakushi-wa anata-wo wasure-masen.	No, I do not forget you.
Kore-wa warui inu-de su. Kono inu-wa garasu-wo kowashi-te-shimai-mashita.	This is a bad dog. This dog has broken up the glass.
Watakushi-wa hako-wo kowashi-te-shimai-mashita.	I have broken the box.
Anata-wa hako-wo tsukuri-mashita ka?	Did you make a box?
Anata-wa hako-wo tsukutte-shimai-mashita ka?	Did you finish making the box?
Watakushi-wa kinoo hako-wo tsukuri-mashita.	I made the box yesterday.
Watakushi-wa kinoo hako-wo tsukutte-shimai-mashita.	I finished making the box yesterday.
Watakushi-wa kinoo hako-wo tsukutte-shimai-masendeshita.	I did not finish making the box yesterday.
Inu-ga pan-wo tabe-te-shimai-mashita.	The dog has eaten up the bread.
Inu-wa pan-wo tabe-te-shimai-masendeshita.	The dog did not eat up the bread.
Kono gohan-wo tabe-te-shimai-mashoo.	Let us eat up this rice.

LESSON 26

Review Lesson



Asa-gohan

Vocabulary:

asa-gohan	<i>breakfast (asa = morning)</i>
ikebana	<i>flower arrangement</i>
hashi	<i>chop sticks</i>
o-wan	<i>lacquer bowl</i>
chawan	<i>rice bowl</i>
dobin	<i>tea kettle (of earthen ware)</i>
yunomi	<i>tea cup</i>
chabu-dai	<i>dining table</i>
o-hitsu	<i>rice tub</i>
sara	<i>plate</i>

Exercises:

- | | |
|---|--|
| Watakushi-wa asa-gohan-ni
pan-wo tabe-masu. | I eat bread at breakfast. |
| Kono hito-wa asa-gohan-ni
Nippon-no mono-wo tabe-
te-i-masu. | She is eating Japanese
things at breakfast. |
| Chabu-dai-no ue-ni chawan
to dobin to hashi to sara-
ga ari-masu. | On the dining table are
rice bowls, tea kettle,
chopsticks and plates. |
| Migi-no hito-wa o-wan-no
futa-wo totte-i-masu. | The person on the right
is taking the lid of
the lacquer bowl. |
| Hidari-no hito-wa chawan-
ni gohan-wo totte-i-masu. | The person on the left
is taking some rice
into the rice bowl. |
| Dobin-no naka-ni o-cha-ga
ari-masu. | There is some tea in
the kettle. |
| Kono hito-wa gohan-wo
tabe-te-mi-te-i-masu. | This person is eating
and tasting the rice. |
| Kono hito-wa o-wan-no
futa-wo totte-mi-te-i-masu. | This person is taking
the lid of the bowl to
look in. |
| Migi-no hito-ga dobin to
yunomi-wo motte-ki-ma-
shita. | The person on the right
brought the tea kettle
and the cups. |
| Hidari-no hito-ga o-hitsu-wo
motte-ki-mashita. | The person on the left
brought the rice tub. |
| Kore-wa kirei-na heya-desu. | This is a pretty room. |
| Tokonoma-ni itsumo kake-
mono to ikebana-ga ari-
masu. | There are a kakemono
and a flower arrange-
ment in the tokonoma
always. |

Kono hito-wa gohan-no This person has been
mae-ni niwa-ni itte-ki- to the garden before
mashita. meal.

Soshite kono hito-wa ike- And she brought the
bana-wo tokonoma-ni flower arrangement
motte-ki-mashita. to the tokonoma.

Kono hito-wa asa-gohan-wo This person has finished
tabe-te-shimai mashita. breakfast.

Keredomo sono hito-wa ima But that person is now
tabe-te-i-masu. eating.

LESSON 27

Request: "Will you give me a box?"

Example:

Hako-wo hitotsu kudasai.

box one give

Will you give me one box? (Please give me one box.)

The verb **kudasai** is used without **masu**. The subject is usually understood. The numerals (**hitotsu**, etc.) are usually employed adverbially as seen in the example. It is permissible to employ it as adjective to say, "**Hitotsu-no hako-wo kudasai**," but this sounds affected and is not recommended.

To stress that the box should be given specially to me, one may say:

Watakushi-ni hako-wo hitotsu kudasai.

Will you give one box to me?

The negative request, *Please do not give me a box*, is expressed usually by

Hako-wa iri-masen.

The box is not needed.

The verb **kudasai** may be made negative to form an exact equivalent of "do not give me," but the negation without the use of **masu** is beyond our scope now. To say "Do not give me anything," employ **nani-mo**, literally *what-also* or *anything*:

Nani-mo iri-masen.

Not anything is needed. (I don't want anything.)

An answer to the request should be:

Hai, age-mashoo. *Yes, I will give. (Yes, let me give.)*

Note that the word for *give* is different in the answer. This is an instance of the Japanese etiquette in speech. The original meaning of the word **age** is to send upward while that of **kudasai** is to send downward. And so the person who requests says politely, "Please send it down to me," and the one who answers says in return, "Yes, I will send it up to you."

The answer in refusal is

Iie, age-rare-masen.

No, I cannot give you.

The construction of **age-rare-masen** will be studied in the lesson for Possibility. Until then a student should simply memorize the expression.

Key Words:

-wo	ending for object
-ni	to
kudasai	give

Vocabulary:

age	<i>give (upward)</i>
age-rare	<i>can give (upward)</i>
iri	<i>be needed</i>
hitotsu	<i>one</i>
kippu	<i>ticket</i>
nani-mo	<i>(not) anything</i>
arigatoo	<i>thank you</i>

Exercises:

Nani-wo age-mashoo ka?	What shall I give you?
Kippu-wo hitotsu kudasai.	Will you give me one ticket?
Nan'-no kippu-wo age-mashoo ka?	Ticket for what shall I give you?
Densha-no kippu-wo hitotsu kudasai.	Please give me one street car ticket.
Hai, age-mashoo. Donata-ni age-mashoo ka?	Yes, I will give. To whom shall I give it?
Watakushi-ni kudasai. Ari-gatoo.	Please give it to me. Thank you.
Kono enpitsu-wo kudasai.	Will you give me this pencil?
Iie, age-rare-masen. Pen-wo age-mashoo ka?	No, I cannot give it to you. Shall I give you a pen.
Iie, pen-wa iri-masen. En-pitsu-wo kudasai.	No, I don't want a pen. Give me a pencil.
Age-rare-masen. Pen-wo age-mashoo.	I cannot give you. I will give you a pen.
Donna heya-wo age-mashoo ka?	What kind of a room shall I give you?

Chiisai kirei-na heya-wo kudasai.	Will you give me a small and pretty room?
Chiisai heya-wa ari-masen. Ookii heya-wo age-ma- shoo.	There is no small room. I will give you a large room.
Ookii heya-wa iri-masen. Chiisai takaku-nai heya- wo kudasai.	I don't want a large room. Give me a small and inexpen- sive room.
Chiisai heya-wa age-rare- masen, keredomo takaku- nai heya-wo age-mashoo. Arigatoo.	I cannot give you a small room, but I will give you an inexpen- sive room. Thank you.
Kono hon-wo age-mashoo ka?	Shall I give you this book?
Iie, iri-masen.	No, I don't need it.
Nani-wo age-mashoo ka?	What shall I give you?
Nani-mo iri-masen.	I don't need anything.

LESSON 28

Request with Verbs: "Will you open it?"

Examples:

Kore-wo ake-te-kudasai.

Will you open this? (Please open this.)

Kore-wo ake-nai-de-kudasai.

Please do not open this.

These are examples of verbs in succession. **Ake-te-kudasai** should best be learned as a unit without any reference to English. But if a student finds it easier to learn an expression when there is an English equivalent, it may be suggested that **kudasai** be translated *give the favour of*. Therefore:—

Kore-wo ake-te-kudasai.

Give me the favour of opening it.

Kore-wo ake-nai-de-kudasai.

Give me the favour of not opening it.

The construction of **ake-nai-de-** will be studied later when the inflexion of verbs is taken up.

The answers to the request are:—

Hai, ake-mashoo.

Yes, I will open.

Hai, ake-te-age-mashoo.

Yes, I will give you the favour of opening.
(respectful)

Iie, ake-rare-masen.

No, I cannot open.

Key Words:

-te-kudasai

-nai-de-kudasai

Vocabulary:

hitotsu

one

hitotsu-mo

(not) one, (not) any

futatsu	<i>two</i>
mittsu	<i>three</i>
yottsu	<i>four</i>
itsutsu	<i>five</i>
to	<i>door</i>
doozo	<i>please</i>

Exercises:

To-wo ake-mashoo ka?	Shall I open the door?
To-wo ake-te-age-mashoo ka?	Shall I open the door for you?
Hai, to-wo ake-te-kudasai.	Yes, please open the door.
Nani-wo motte-ki-mashoo ka?	What shall I bring?
Nani-wo motte-ki-te-age-mashoo ka?	What shall I bring for you?
O-cha-wo mittsu motte-ki-te-kudasai.	Please bring three teas.
Nani-wo shi-te-age-mashoo ka?	What shall I do for you?
Doozo shinbun-wo yon-de-kudasai.	Please read the newspaper.
Hai, yomi-mashoo.	Yes, I will read.
Arigatoo.	Thank you.
Ashita ki-te-age-mashoo ka?	Shall I come tomorrow?
Hai, doozo.	Yes, please.
Sono to-wo futatsu shime-te-kudasai.	Please shut two of those doors.
Iie, shime-rare-masen.	No, I cannot close them.

Doozo kono pan-wo tabe-te-kudasai.	Please eat this bread.
Doozo kono pan-wo tabe-te-shimatte-kudasai.	Please finish up this bread.
Iie, hitotsu-mo tabe-rare-masen.	No, I cannot eat any.
Kono hon-wo ima yonde-shimatte-kudasai.	Will you finish reading this book now?
Hai, soo shi-mashoo.	Yes, I will do so.
Ima densha-ga ari-masen. Aruite-itte-kudasai.	There is no street car now. Please go on foot.
Soshite kono hako-wo motte-itte-kudasai.	And will you take this box with you?
Kono hako-wa iri-masen. Kono hako-wo kowashite-shimatte-kudasai.	I don't want this box. Please break this box up.
Soshite ookii yoi hako-wo tsukutte-kudasai.	And will you make me a nice big box?

LESSON 29

Numerals (1)

Examples:

Koko-ni hako-ga hitotsu ari-masu.

Here is one box.

Kore-wa hitotsu-no uchi-de su.

This is one house.

Kore-wa hitotsu-de-nai uchi-de su.

This is not one house.

Numerals are noun-adjectives, but they are oftener used adverbially. As it was explained before, it is quite correct to say: "*Koko-ni hitotsu-no hako-ga ari-masu,*" but the above way is preferred as more colloquial. There are certain types of expressions in which there is no other way but to use the numerals as noun-adjectives, of which one type of examples are shown above.

Vocabulary:

itsutsu	<i>five</i>	kokonotsu	<i>nine</i>
muttsu	<i>six</i>	too	<i>ten</i>
nanatsu	<i>seven</i>	ikutsu	<i>how many?</i>
yattsu	<i>eight</i>	takusan	<i>many, much</i>

All the words in the above vocabulary are noun-adjectives. It may be mentioned in passing that the last syllable of the numerals, *tsu*, has a meaning to which the nearest English equivalent is *piece* or *unit*. Also, it must be mentioned that this system of counting goes up to ten only.¹ There is another system of counting which takes care of all numbers.

Exercises:

Kore-wa futatsu-no uchi-de This is not two houses.
ari-masen.

Kore-wa hitotsu-no uchi-de This is one house.
su.

Futatsu-de-nai hon-wo kuda- Please give me a book
sai. which is not in two
 (volumes).

¹ There is a standing riddle for all Japanese children:—"Why does *too* have no *tsu* at its end?" "Because *itsutsu* has taken an extra *tsu* to itself."

Kono tana-no ue-ni kirei-na sara-ga nanatsu ari-masu.	On this shelf there are seven pretty plates.
Kono yattsu-no hon-wa taisetsu-de ari-masen.	These eight books are not important.
Kono kokonotsu-no hon-wa taisetsu-de su.	These nine books are important.
Anata-wa tegami-wo ikutsu kaki-mashita ka?	How many letters did you write?
Watakushi-wa kinoo tegami-wo yottsu kaki-mashita.	I wrote four letters yesterday.
Anata-wa ima gohan-wo ikutsu tabe-mashita ka?	How many (bowls of) rice did you eat just now?
Watakushi-wa ima gohan-wo mittsu tabe-mashita.	I have just eaten three bowls of rice.
Anata-wa nani-wo ikutsu tabe-mashita ka?	How many of what did you eat?
Watakushi-wa pan-wo futatsu to gohan-wo hitotsu tabe-mashita.	I ate two slices of bread and one bowl of rice.
Kono uchi-ni heya-ga takusan ari-masu ka?	Are there many rooms in this house?
Hai, kono uchi-ni heya-ga too ari-masu.	Yes, there are ten rooms in this house.
Anata-wa enpitsu-wo ikutsu motte-ki-mashita ka?	How many pencils did you bring?
Watakushi-wa enpitsu-wo itsutsu motte-ki-mashita.	I brought five pencils.
Ashita gakkoo-ni sando-witchi-wo takusan motte-iki-mashoo.	Tomorrow let us take many sandwiches to school.

Naifu to fooku-wo takusan Please bring many
motte-ki-te-kudasai. knives and forks.

Ikutsu motte-ki-mashoo ka? How many shall I bring?

Naifu-wo muttsu to fooku- Please bring six knives
wo nanatsu motte-ki-te and seven forks.
kudasai.

LESSON 30

Numerals (2)

Examples (1):

Koko-ni hon-ga san-satsu ari-masu.

Here are three volumes of books.

Koko-ni hon-ga juu-ichi ari-masu.

Here are eleven books.

There are two systems of numerals in Japanese.
Here is given the second system:

Vocabulary (1):

ichi	one	juu-ichi	eleven
ni	two	juu-ni	twelve
san	three	etc.	
shi	four	ni-juu	twenty
go	five	ni-juu-ichi	twenty-one
roku	six	ni-juu-ni	twenty-two
shichi	seven	etc.	
hachi	eight	san-juu	thirty
ku	nine	san-juu-ichi	thirty-one
juu	ten	etc.	

The numerals of the second system do not have **tsu** for the last syllable. And they need numeral adjuncts, such as **satsu** (*volume*), in indicating the number of things up to ten. One cannot say, **Koko-ni hon-ga san ari-masu**, or **Koko-ni san-no hon-ga ari-masu**. **San** must be followed by **satsu** or other adjuncts according to the kind of things to be numbered. Various kinds of adjuncts are given in the next lesson.

This rule, however, holds with numbers below ten only. The first system ends at ten and from eleven on there is only the second system which may be used either with or without the adjuncts. Therefore one may say either, **Koko-ni hon-ga juu-ichi ari-masu** or **Koko-ni hon-ga juu-ichi-satsu ari-masu**, or use the numeral as noun-adjective as **juu-ichi-no hon** or **juu-ichi-satsu-no hon**.

The first system is the original Japanese way of counting. In the ancient days it must have been a full system, but since the adoption of the second system from Chinese, the first system beyond ten went into disuse as being less convenient. That is over a thousand years since.

The present Japanese system of numbers above ten is the most logical one possible. By the different combinations of the ten words (from one to ten) all the numbers up to ninety-nine can be expressed.

As the ability to make use of numbers is one of the greatest necessities in travelling in a foreign land, a student is advised to make a complete table of numbers for himself and turn to it every day so as to master them thoroughly.

Vocabulary (2):

hyaku	100
sen	1,000
man	10,000
juu-man	100,000
hyaku-man	1,000,000
sen-man	10,000,000
oku	100,000,000
juu-oku	1,000,000,000
hyaku-oku	10,000,000,000
sen-oku	100,000,000,000
choo	1,000,000,000,000
rei	0

Examples (2):

The Japanese numbers should be cut every four places; in the following examples it is so done:

go-hyaku san-juu	530
roku-sen go-hyaku san-juu	6530
ni-man roku-sen go-hyaku san-juu	2,6530
ni-hyaku-juu-ni-man roku-sen go-hyaku san-juu	212,6530
juu-go-oku ni-hyaku-juu-ni-man roku-sen go-hyaku san-juu	15,0212,6530

An easier way of reading a number is, for instance, reading 530 go-san-rei or 6530 roku-go-san-rei.

Exercises:

Tsukue-no ue-ni ookii hon- ga roku-satsu ari-masu.	There are six big books on the desk.
---	---

- | | |
|---|--|
| Kono shichi-satsu-no hon-wa taisetsu-de ari-masen. | These seven books are not important. |
| Anata-wa tegami-wo ikutsu kaki-mashita ka? | How many letters did you write? |
| Watakushi-wa kinoo tegami-wo juu-hachi kaki-mashita. | I wrote eighteen letters yesterday. |
| Anata-wa ima nani-wo ikutsu tabe-mashita ka? | How many of what did you eat just now? |
| Watakushi-wa ima sando-witchi-wo juu-ni tabe-mashita. | Just now I ate twelve sandwiches. |
| Kono uchi-ni heya-ga takusan ari-masu ka? | Are there many rooms in this house? |
| Hai, kono uchi-ni heya-ga ni-juu ari-masu. | Yes, there are twenty rooms in this house. |
| Anata-wa enpitsu-wo ikutsu motte-ki-mashita ka? | How many pencils did you bring? |
| Watakushi-wa enpitsu-wo juu-ku motte-ki-mashita. | I brought nineteen pencils. |
| Naifu to fooku-wo takusan motte-ki-te-kudasai. | Please bring me lots of knives and forks. |
| Ikutsu motte-ki-mashoo ka? | How many shall I bring? |
| Naifu-wo juu-roku to fooku-wo juu-shichi motte-ki-te-kudasai. | Please bring sixteen knives and seventeen forks. |
| Anata-wa ikutsu-de su ka? | How old are you? |
| Watakushi-wa kokonotsu-de su. | I am nine. |
| Sono hito-wa ikutsu-de su ka? | How old is he? |
| Sono hito-washi-juu-go-de su. | He is forty-five. |

LESSON 31

Numeral Adjuncts (1)

Examples:

Koko-ni kami-ga ichi-mai ari-masu.

Here is one sheet of paper.

Kore-wo ichi-mai-no kami-ni kaite-kudasai.

Please write this on one sheet of paper.

Vocabulary:

kami	<i>paper</i>
mai	<i>sheet of</i>
satsu	<i>volume of</i>
dai	<i>"unit,"</i> used for cars and machinery
hon	<i>"stick,"</i> used for long objects as pencils
hiki	<i>"head,"</i> used for living things in general
kumi	<i>set, pair</i>
hai	<i>—ful, as cupful, spoonful, etc.</i>

The variety of numeral adjuncts is larger with the Japanese language than with English. They are a kind of words simply troublesome to students with apparently no absolute necessity. In fact it is quite correct to use the first system of the numerals (*hitotsu, futatsu, etc.*) in place of any of the adjuncts, as **Koko-ni kami-ga hitotsu ari-masu.** Also, there are many things which can not be classified for any one of the adjuncts, such as doors, windows, tables and ink-bottles. Therefore, it may be just as well, and

perhaps safer, for a student to use the first system of numerals in all cases. However one must learn the adjuncts so as to understand them.

There are some euphonic contractions which add to the complication, but that will be taken up in the next lesson. In this lesson all cases of contractions will be carefully avoided.

For making interrogation, such as *how many sheets of* or *how many volumes of*, use *nan-* or *iku-*:

nan-mai	<i>how many sheets of</i>
nan-satsu	<i>how many volumes of</i>
nan-dai	<i>how many "units" of</i>
etc.	
iku-mai	<i>how many sheets of</i>
iku-satsu	<i>how many volumes of</i>
iku-dai	<i>how many "units" of</i>
iku-hon	<i>how many "sticks" of</i>
etc.	

The above two groups of words with *nan-* and *iku-* are quite interchangeable, there being no difference in their meaning or uses between them. One may note that *nan-* is abbreviation of *nani* (*what*) and *iku-* is the first two syllables of *ikutsu* (*how many*).

Exercises:

Kami-wo nan-mai	age-	How many sheets of pa-
mashoo ka?		per shall I give you?
Kami-wo roku-mai	kudasai.	Please give me six
		sheets of paper.

Soko-ni hon-ga nan-satsu ari-masu ka?	How many volumes of books are there?
Koko-ni roku-satsu ari-masu.	Here are six volumes.
Densha-ga ichi-dai ki-mashita.	One street car came.
Anata-wa enpitsu-wo iku-hon motte-ki-mashita ka?	How many pencils did you bring?
Watakushi-wa shichi-hon motte-ki-mashita.	I brought seven.
Niwa-ni inu-ga iku-hiki i-masu ka?	How many dogs are there in the yard?
Ni-hiki i-masu.	There are two.
Anata-wa sara to yunomi-wo iku-kumi motte-i-masu ka?	How many sets of saucer and cups have you?
Watakushi-wa juu-ni-kumi motte-i-masu.	I have twelve sets.
Gohan-wo takusan tabe-mashoo. Anata-wa iku-hai tabe-masu ka?	Let us eat a lot of rice. How many bowlfuls will you eat?
Watakushi-wa go-hai tabe-mashoo.	I will eat five bowlfuls.
Kore-wo ichi-mai-no kami-ni kaki-mashoo ka?	Shall I write this on one sheet of paper?
Iie, kore-wo ni-mai-no kami-ni kaite-kudasai.	No, please write it on two sheets of paper.
Ichi-dai-no densha-ni notte-kudasai.	Please get in (ride) one car (together).

LESSON 32

Numeral Adjuncts (2)

Note the following euphonic changes. They are again something troublesome with no absolute necessity. A student who is making a rapid study of the language is advised to pass on quickly to following lessons which contain more useful materials. Numbers themselves are important, but not the adjuncts.

Euphonic Changes:

yo-mai, not shi-mai	4 sheets
nana-mai, or shichi-mai	7 sheets
issatsu	1 volume
yon-satsu, or shi-satsu	4 volumes
nana-satsu, or shichi-satsu	7 volumes
jissatsu	10 volumes
juu-issatsu	11 volumes
ni-jissatsu	20 volumes
yo-dai, not shi-dai	4 units
nana-dai, or shichi-dai	7 units
ippon	1 stick
san-bon	3 sticks
yon-hon, or shi-hon	4 sticks
roppon	6 sticks
nana-hon, or shichi-hon	7 sticks
jippon	10 sticks
juu-ippon	11 sticks
nan-bon	how many sticks?

ippiki	1 head
san-biki	3 heads
yon-hiki, or shi-hiki	4 heads
roppiki	6 heads
nana-hiki, or shichi-hiki	7 heads
jippiki	10 heads
nan-biki	how many heads?
ippai	1 —ful
san-bai	3 —fuls
yon-hai, or shi-hai	4 —fuls
roppai	6 —fuls
nana-hai, or shichi-hai	7 —fuls
jippai	10 —fuls
nan-bai	how many —fuls?

kumi is an exception; it has a strange way of counting.

hito-kumi	1 set
futa-kumi	2 sets
mi-kumi	3 sets
yo-kumi	4 sets
itsu-kumi	5 sets
mu-kumi	6 sets
nana-kumi	7 sets
ya-kumi	8 sets
ku-kumi, or kyuu-kumi	9 sets
to-kumi	10 sets
juu-ichi-kumi	11 sets
iku-kumi, or nan-kumi	how many sets?

The counting of **kumi** is somewhat the mixture of the first and the second systems.

The Japanese people are ever careful to keep the dignity of human beings over the rest of the animal kingdom. Therefore they use a separate system for counting the number of men and women and children.

hitori, or ichi-nin	ku-nin
futari, or ni-nin	juu-nin
san-nin	juu-ichi-nin
yottari, or yo-nin	juu-ni-nin
go-nin	juu-san-nin
roku-nin	juu-yo-nin
nana-nin, or shichi-nin	
hachi-nin	nan-nin? or iku-nin?

In recent years the use of **yo** or **yon** instead of **shi**, and **nana** instead of **shichi** has come into general use. The reason is that the sound of **shi** and **shichi** are difficult to distinguish especially over the telephone. Needless to say **yo** was borrowed from **yottsu** and **nana** from **nanatsu**.

Exercises:

Honbako-ni ookii hon-ga jissatsu to chiisai hon-ga juu-issatsu ari-masu.	In the bookcase there are ten big books and eleven small books.
Shinbun-wo yo-mai katte- kudasai.	Please buy four news- papers.
Pen to enpitsu to kami- wo takusan motte-ki-te- kudasai.	Please bring me many pens, pencils and pa- pers.
Ikutsu motte-ki-mashoo ka?	How many shall I bring?

Pen-wo juu-roppon to en- pitsu-wo juu-san-bon to kami-wo ni-juu-yo-mai motte-ki-te-kudasai.	Please bring sixteen pens, thirteen pen- cils and twenty-four sheets of paper.
Soko-ni inu-ga nan-biki i- masu ka?	How many dogs are there?
Koko-ni inu-ga ippiki i- masu.	There is one dog here.
Mizu-wo nan-bai age- mashoo ka?	How many (glasses of) water shall I give you?
San-bai kudasai.	Please give me three (glasses).
Anata-wa kono kirei-na sara-wo iku-kumi motte- i-masu ka?	How many sets of these pretty plates have you?
Watakushi-wa kono sara-wo itsu-kumi motte-i-masu.	I have five sets of these plates.
Kono yunomi-wo futa-kumi katte-kudasai.	Please buy me two sets of these cups.
Anata-no uchi-ni ima nan- nin-no hito-ga i-masu ka?	How many people are there in your house now?
Shichi-nin i-masu.	There are seven people.
Nan-de su ka?	What is that?
Nana-nin-de su.	(The number) is seven.
Soo-de su ka?	Is that so? (I see.)
Kono heya-ni hito-ga iku- nin i-masu ka?	How many people are there in this room?
Kono heya-ni ima juu-yo- nin i-masu.	There are fourteen peo- ple in this room now.

LESSON 33

Ordinal Numbers

Examples:

Watakushi-ga ichi-ban-ni ki-mashita.

I came first.

Watakushi-wa ichi-banme-no to-wo ake-mashita.

I opened the first door.

Literally *ichi-ban* means *number one*. When it is used as an adverb, it has the ending *-ni* as in the first of the above examples. When it is used as an adjective as in the second of the examples, it has the ending *-no*. *-Ni* may be remembered as the *in* of *in the first place*, while *-no* may be remembered as the *of* of *of the first place*.

Ichiban and *ichi-banme* are almost interchangeable. The latter is more emphatic or precise and tangible, but the distinction is not absolute.

The counting of the ordinal numbers goes *ichi-ban*, *ni-ban*, etc., quite regularly except for *fourth* which is *yo-ban* and not *shi-ban*. *Fourteenth* is *juu-yo-ban* and all other numbers ending in *four* follow suit.

Key Words:

-ban, -banme	<i>number (in order)</i>
-ni-	ending for adverbial use (<i>in</i>)
no	ending for adjective use (<i>of</i>)

Vocabulary:

nan-ban, nan-banme *what number? which?*

iku-ban, iku-banme	<i>what number? which?</i>
dono (adjective)	<i>which?</i>
kodomo	<i>child</i>
hikidashi	<i>drawer</i>
bangoo	<i>the number</i>

Exercises:

- Watakushi-ga ichi-ban-ni I came first and you
ki-mashita, soshite anata- came second.
ga ni-ban-ni ki-mashita.
- Anata-no kodomo-wa doko- Where is your child?
ni i-masu ka?
- Watakushi-no kodomo-wa My child is standing
migi-kara roku-banme-ni sixth from the right.
tatte-i-masu.
- Smith-san-wa doko-ni su- Where is Mr. Smith
watte-i-masu ka? sitting.
- Smith-san-wa mae-kara ni- Mr. Smith is sitting sec-
banme, hidari-kara go- ond from the front
banme-ni suwatte-i-masu. and fifth from the left.
- Kono hito-ga ichi-ban-ni This person finished
gohan-wo tabe-te shimai- eating the meal first.
mashita.
- Watakushi-ga kono hon-wo I finished reading this
ichi-ban-ni yonde-shimai- book first.
mashita.
- Dono heya-ga anata-no-de Which room is yours?
su ka?
- San-banme-no heya-ga wata- The third room is mine.
kushi-no-de su.

Nan-banme-no hikidashi-wo ake-mashoo ka?	Which drawer shall I open?
Ue-kara yo-banme-no hiki- dashi-wo ake-te-kudasai.	Please open the fourth drawer from the top.
Anata-wa nan-ban-de su ka?	What is your number?
Anata-no bangoo-wa nan-de su ka?	What is your number?
Watakushi-wa juu-san-ban- de su.	I am thirteenth.
Kono heya-no bangoo-wa nan-de su ka?	What is the number of this room?
Juu-roku-ban-de su.	It is sixteen.
Dore-ga anata-no tsukue-de su ka?	Which is your desk?
Watakushi-no-wa ushiro- kara shichi-banme-de su.	Mine is the seventh from the rear.
Kippu-wa nan-banme-no hikidashi-ni ari-masu ka?	In which drawer is the ticket?
Kippu-wa sono tsukue-no shita-kara ni-banme-no hikidashi-ni ari-masu.	The ticket is in the sec- ond drawer from the bottom of that desk.

LESSON 34

Comparison

Examples:

Kono heya-no naka-de watakushi-ga ichi-ban
ookiku ari-masu.

In this room I am the biggest,

Watakushi-wa anata yori ookiku ari-masu.

I am bigger than you.

Kono hito-wa watakushi yori motto ookiku ari-masu.

This person is bigger than me.

In Japanese there is no particular words or endings which must be used in comparison, such as *more* and *most*, or *-er* and *-est*. The superlative is expressed simply by the use of **ichi-ban**. In the same way the second biggest, etc., can be expressed by **ni-ban-ni ookiku**, etc. As this is the adverbial use of the numerals, **-ni** should be used as the ending, but with **ichi-ban** it is usually omitted for brevity.

Motto may or may not be used in comparative. Its use makes the statement more definite and emphatic.

Key Words:

-ban	<i>number (in order)</i>
-no naka-de	<i>in, among</i>
-de	<i>in, among (abbreviation of -no naka-de)</i>
motto	<i>more</i>
yori	<i>than</i>

Vocabulary:

yasui (regular adjective)	<i>inexpensive</i>
hikui (regular adjective)	<i>low</i>
takai (regular adjective)	<i>high, expensive</i>
isu	<i>chair</i>

dore	<i>which one?</i> (among many)
dochira	<i>which one?</i> (of the two)

Exercises:

Kore-wa sore yori takai isu-de su.	This is a more expensive (or higher) chair than that.
Dore-ga ichi-ban yasui isu-de su ka?	Which is the cheapest chair?
Kono itsutsu-no isu-no naka-de dore-ga ichi-ban yoi-de shoo ka?	Of these five chairs which is the best?
Kore to kore-ga ichi-ban kirei-de su. Kono futatsu-ga yoi-de shoo.	This and this are the prettiest. These two will be good.
Futatsu-wa iri-masen. Sono futatsu-no naka-de dochira-ga yoi-de shoo ka?	I don't need two. Of those two which is better?
Kore-wa sore yori yasui isu-de su.	This is a cheaper chair than that.
Yasui mono-wa iri-masen. Takai isu-wo kai-mashoo.	I don't want a cheap thing. I will buy an expensive chair.
Motto takai isu-wa ari-masen ka?	Isn't there a more expensive chair?
Kore yori takai mono-wa ari-masen.	There is not anything more expensive than this.
Kono honbako-no naka-de dore-ga ichi-ban yoi hon-de su ka?	In this bookcase which is the best book?
Kore-ga ichi-ban yoi hon-de su.	This is the best book.

Sore yori motto yoi hon-wa ari-masen ka?	Isn't there any book better than that?
Kore yori yoi hon-wa ari- masen.	There is no book better than this.
Gakkoo-de donata-ga ichi- ban ookiku ari-masu ka?	Who is the biggest in school?
Watakushi-ga gakkoo-de ichi-ban ookiku ari-masu.	I am the biggest in school.
Gohan-wo motto age- mashoo ka?	Shall I give you more rice?
Hai, gohan-wo motto kuda- sai.	Yes, please give me more rice.

LESSON 35

Time and Money

Examples:

Ima yo-ji shi-fun sugi-de su.

It is four minutes past four.

Kore-wa yo-yen yon-sen-de su.

This is four yen four sen.

In the first of the above examples the subject is understood. To be very precise one may say, *jikan-wa ima yo-ji shi-fun sugi-de su*, (*The time is now four minutes past four.*)

According to the standard pronunciation of Tokyo people, yen is pronounced en, but because of

the usage since the early days when Romaji, the Roman way of spelling, was first organized, we are still using the old spelling. The early Romaji spelling was based upon a certain school of thought which insisted on making the pronunciation strong by the use of y before e's.

Vocabulary:

ji	<i>o'clock</i>
jikan	<i>hour, time</i>
nan-ji	<i>what time?</i>
fun	<i>minute</i>
byoo	<i>second</i>
sugi	<i>past</i>
mae	<i>before, ago</i>
made	<i>until</i>
han	<i>half, half past</i>
yen	basic unit of Japanese money
sen	one hundredth of one yen
nan-yen	<i>how many yen?</i>
nan-sen	<i>how many sen?</i>
ikura	<i>how much?</i>

Many of the words in the above vocabulary have appeared before in slightly different usages. The following euphonic changes are again the troublesome nonessentials in language studies. One can make oneself understood without knowing them. So, the euphonic changes may be taken up according to the degree of zeal and purpose of a student.

Euphonic Changes:

yo-ji (not shi-ji)	4 o'clock
ippun	1 minute
san-pun	3 minutes
roppun	6 minutes
jippun	10 minutes
juu-ippun	11 minutes
yo-yen (not shi-yen)	4 yen
yon-juu-yen (rarely shi-juu-yen)	40 yen
yon-hyaku-yen (not shi-hyaku-yen)	400 yen
jissen	10 sen

Exercises:

Ima nan-ji-de su ka?	What time is it now?
Ima san-ji go-fun sugi-de su.	It is five minutes past three.
Ima juu-ichi-ji juu-go-fun mae-de su.	It is fifteen minutes before eleven.
Anata-wa itsu ki-mashita ka?	When did you come?
Watakushi-wa hachi-ji jip-pun-ni ki-mashita.	I came at eight-ten.
Densha-wa nan-ji-ni de-masu ka?	At what time does the electric car go?
Densha-wa yo-ji juu-roppun-ni de-masu.	The electric car goes at 4:16.
Anata-wa itsu kara koko-ni i-masu ka?	Since when have you been here?
Watakushi-wa ni-ji kara koko-ni i-masu.	I have been here since two.

Watakushi-wa ichi-jikan mae kara koko-ni i-masu.	I have been here since one hour ago.
Anata-wa itsu made koko-ni i-masu ka?	Until when will you be here?
Watakushi-wa shichi-ji han made koko-ni i-masu.	I will be here till half past seven.
Gohan-wa nan-ji-de su ka?	What time is the meal?
Gohan-wa juu-ni-ji han-de su.	The meal is half past twelve.
Kore-wa ikura-de su ka?	How much is this?
Kore-wa yon-hyaku-nana- juu-yen de su.	This is four hundred and seventy yen.
Densha-no kippu-wa ikura- de su ka?	How much is the elec- tric car ticket?
Juu-yen-de su.	It is ten yen.
Yokohama made ikura-de su ka?	How much is it to Yokohama?
Yokohama made yon-juu- yen-de su.	It is 40 yen to Yoko- hama.
Kono pen to inku-wa ikura- de su ka?	How much are these pen and ink?
Pen-wa yo-yen-de su; inku- wa go-juu-yen-de su.	The pen is four yen; the ink is fifty yen.
Ichi-ban takai kimono-wa ikura-de su ka?	How much is the most expensive kimono?
Ni-man-go-sen-yen-de su.	It is 25,000 yen.
Nan-yen-de su ka?	How many yen?
Ni-man-go-sen-yen-de su.	Twenty-five thousand yen.

LESSON 36

Days, Months, and Years

The Japanese language is very simple in structure and its numerical system is most logical. Only when one wishes to speak idiomatically do the euphonic changes and idiomatic expressions appear here and there to be the seemingly unnecessary bother.

Here are listed all the expressions concerning the counts of the days of a month, of a week, and the months of a year. They make too long and too many lists for one lesson, but they are grouped together for convenience in future references. They are not to be learned at once, and there is not much to be studied about them except simple memorization. A student should give them a quick perusal and pass on to further lessons. But try to return to them now and then for leisurely memorizing.

Days of a Month:

tsuitachi or ichi-nichi	1st
futsuka or ni-nichi	2nd
mikka or san-nichi	3rd
yokka or yon-nichi	4th
itsuka or go-nichi	5th
muika or roku-nichi	6th
nanuka or shichi-nichi	7th
yooka or hachi-nichi	8th
kokonoka or ku-nichi	9th

tooka	<i>10th</i>
juu-ichi-nichi	<i>11th</i>
juu-ni-nichi	<i>12th</i>
etc.	
hatsuka	<i>20th</i>
nijuu-ichi-nichi	<i>21st</i>
misoka	the last days of a month
ganjitsu	<i>the New Year's Day</i>

The etymology of the days of a month is very interesting, for it traces its origin to the old lunar calendar, but we shall not go into it. It is a custom in Japan to settle accounts on the last day of every month even when it falls on a Sunday, and **misoka** has become almost a synonym to the pay day. The last day of a year, thirty-first of December, is called **oo-misoka** (great misoka), the most important pay day and no postponement is tolerated—a dreaded day for everybody. But the next day is **ganjitsu**, the New Year's Day. Then all the troubles are forgotten for the day and even the devilish creditors go round smiling.

nan-nichi or iku-nichi	<i>what day? how many days?</i>
hi	<i>day</i>
kyoo or kon-nichi	<i>today</i>
ashita or myoo-nichi	<i>tomorrow</i>
kinoo or saku-jitsu	<i>yesterday</i>

Days of a Week:

nichi-yoobi	<i>Sunday</i>
getsu-yoobi	<i>Monday</i>
ka-yoobi	<i>Tuesday</i>
sui-yoobi	<i>Wednesday</i>
moku-yoobi	<i>Thursday</i>
kin-yoobi	<i>Friday</i>
do-yoobi	<i>Saturday</i>
nani-yoobi	<i>what day of the week?</i>
kon-shuu	<i>this week</i>
rai-shuu	<i>coming week</i>
sen-shuu	<i>last week</i>
shuu-kan	<i>week, as ni-shuu-kan = two weeks</i>

Months of a Year:

ichi-gatsu	<i>January</i>
ni-gatsu	<i>February</i>
san-gatsu	<i>March</i>
shi-gatsu	<i>April</i>
go-gatsu	<i>May</i>
roku-gatsu	<i>June</i>
shichi-gatsu	<i>July</i>

and so forth regularly to juu-ni-gatsu, *December:*

nan-gatsu	<i>what month?</i>
nan-ka-gatsu	<i>how many months?</i>
ichi-ka-gatsu	<i>one month</i>
ni-ka-gatsu	<i>two months</i>
kon-gatsu	<i>this month</i>
rai-gatsu	<i>next month</i>
sen-gatsu	<i>last month</i>
tsuki	<i>month, moon</i>

Year:

gan-nen	<i>first year (of an era)</i>
ichi-nen	<i>first year, one year</i>
ni-nen	<i>second year, two years</i>
san-nen	<i>third year, three years</i>
etc.	
kotoshi or kon-nen	<i>this year</i>
rai-nen or myoo-nen	<i>next year</i>
kyo-nen or saku-nen	<i>last year</i>
nan-nen	<i>what year?</i>
nan-nen or iku-nen	<i>how many years?</i>
ichi-ka-nen	<i>one year</i>
ni-ka-nen	<i>two years</i>
etc.	
toshi	<i>year</i>
sai	<i>years old, as ni-sai = two years old</i>

Exercises:

Kyoo-wa nan-nichi-de su ka?	What day (of the month) is (it) today?
Kyoo-wa juu-ni-gatsu ni-juu-go-nichi-de su.	Today is December 25th.
Kyoo-wa nan-no hi-de su ka?	What day is (it) today?
Kyoo-wa Kurisumasu-no hi-de su.	Today is the day of Christmas.
Ashita-wa nani-yoobi-de su ka?	What day of the week is (it) tomorrow?
Ashita-wa ka-yoobi-de su.	Tomorrow is Tuesday.

Anata-wa Nippon-ni nan-nichi i-mashita ka?	How many days were you in Japan?
Watakushi-wa Nippon-ni ni-shuu-kan i-mashita.	I was in Japan for two weeks.
Watakushi-wa Nippon-ni ichi-nen to ni-ka-getsu i-mashita.	I was in Japan for one year and two months.
Kono kodomo-wa nan-sai-de su ka?	How old is this child?
Kono kodomo-wa shichi-sai to san-ka-getsu-de su.	This child is seven years and three months.

LESSON 37

Complex Sentences (1)

The House Which I Looked at Was a Very Good House.

Examples:

Watakushi-ga mi-mashita uchi-wa taihen yoi uchi-de shita.

The house which I looked at was a very good house.

Watakushi-ga uchi-ni i-mashita koto-wa yoi koto-de shita.

The fact that I was at home was a good thing.

In the above examples the corresponding portions of the sentences in both Japanese and English are under-

lined. One may note (1) that the Japanese language has no relative pronouns such as *which* and *who*; also (2) that all the explanatory words, or subordinate clause, come before the word to be explained. In the first of the above examples *Watakushi-ga mi-mashita* comes before *uchi* while in English *which I saw* comes after *the house*. The same rule holds with the adjectives—an adjective always precedes a noun it modifies. For instance, in Japanese there is no such word order as *a man, good and wise*. It has to be always *yoi rikoo-na hito* (*a good wise man*).

A good way to learn the structure of a Japanese complex sentence is to see how it developed out of the combination of two sentences:

Watakushi-ga uchi-wo mi-mashita; sono uchi-wa yoi uchi-de shita.

I looked at a house; that house was a good house.

Drop the underlined words and there is the complex sentence. The second sentence of the examples may be considered as a development of the following sentences:—

Watakushi-ga uchi-ni i-mashita; sono koto-wa yoi koto-de shita.

I was at home; that fact was a good thing.

Vocabulary:

koto

tsukai (tsukatte-i-masu)

“katarogu”

fact

use, employ

catalogue

Exercises:

- | | |
|---|--|
| Anata ga mi-mashita uchi-wa yoi uchi-de shita ka? | Was the house which you looked at a good house? |
| Soo-de su, watakushi-ga mi-mashita uchi-wa yoi uchi-de shita. | Yes, the house I saw was a good house. |
| Dono hon-wo age-mashoo ka? | Which book shall I give you? |
| Tana-no ue-ni ari-masu hon-wo kudasai. | Please give me the book which is on the shelf. |
| Anata-ga motte-i-masu hon-wo kudasai. | Please give me the book which you have. |
| Anata-ga motte-ki-mashita mono-wa nan-de su ka? | What is the thing which you brought? |
| Watakushi-ga motte-ki-mashita mono-wa hon-no katarogu-de su. | The thing which I brought is a catalogue of books. |
| Anata-ga sono hon-wo yomi-mashita koto-wa yoi koto-de shita ka? | Was it a good thing that you read that book? |
| Hai, watakushi-ga kono hon-wo yomi-mashita koto-wa yoi koto-de shita. | That I read this book was a good thing. |
| Anata-ga tsukatte-i-masu otoko-wa yoi hito-de su ka? | Is that man whom you are employing a good person? |
| Iie, watakushi-ga tsukatte-i-masu otoko-wa yoi hito-de ari-masen. | No the man I am employing is not a good person. |

Anata-wa itsu kara sono pen-wo motte-i-masu ka? Since when have you had that pen?

Watakushi-wa kono pen-wo juu-nen mae kara tsukatte-i-masu. I have been using this pen since ten years ago.

LESSON 38

Complex Sentences (2)

Example (1):

Kore-ga, watakushi-ga kinoo mi-mashita, uchi-de su.

This is the house which I looked at yesterday.

Sono hito-wa "ashita Tokyo-ni iki-mashoo" to ii-mashita.

He said, "Let us go to Tokyo tomorrow."

A subordinate clause may be inserted between the parts of the main clause as seen in the above examples. Because the Japanese language has no relative pronouns, such as *which* or *who*, it is sometimes difficult to know where the subordinate clause begins or ends. The lack of relative pronouns is one of the few, but great, inconveniences of the Japanese language. In this book the subordinate clauses are marked off with commas.

Japanese people are never inconvenienced by the lack of relative pronouns in daily use of the language, but in translating an intricate classical English the Japanese translation is liable to become very involved.

The word **to** in the second sentence of the above examples is somewhat the equivalent of *that* in English. But **to** is used after all the quotations; and there is no distinction of direct or indirect quotation in Japanese. The quotation mark may or may not be used, and its use causes no difference to the sentence construction.

Example (2):

Hon-wa Eigo-de book to ii-masu.

They call hon "book" in English.

This is an idiomatic expression of peculiar construction. I consider that this sentence was derived from **Hito-wa hon-wo Eigo-de book to ii-masu**, and that somehow **hon-wo** turned into a subject, **hon-wa**.

Vocabulary:

to	(that)
Ei-	English
-go	language
-de	in, by means of
ii (itte-i-masu)	say, call
oshie	teach
tegami	letter

Exercises:

Kore-wa, anata-ga tsukai-mashita, hon-de su ka?	Is this the book which you used?
Hai, kore-wa, Watakushi-ga tsukai-mashita, hon-de su.	Yes, this is the book which I used.
Kore-wa nan-de su ka?	What is this?

- Kore-wa, watakushi-ga kaki-mashita, tegami-de su. This is a letter which I wrote.
- Anata-ga kono tegami-wo kaki-mashita, hito-de su ka? Are you the person who wrote this letter?
- Soo-de su, watakushi-ga, kono tegami-wo kaki-mashita, hito-de su. Yes, I am the person who wrote this letter.
- Koko-ni, watakushi-ga Ei-go-de kaki-mashita, tegami-ga ari-masu. Here is the letter which I wrote in English.
- Smith-san-wa, ashita iki-mashoo, to ii-mashita ka? Did Mr. Smith say that he will go tomorrow?
- Hai, Smith-san-wa, ashita iki-mashoo, to ii-mashita. Yes, Smith said that he will go tomorrow.
- Soo-de su, Smith-san-wa soo ii-mashita. Yes, Mr. Smith said so.
- Kiyooka-san-wa nan to ii-mashita ka? What did Mr. Kiyooka say?
- Kiyooka-san-wa, kono hon-wo motto yonde-kudasai, to ii-mashita. Mr. Kiyooka said, "Please read this book more."
- Tegami-wa Ei-go-de nan to ii-masu ka? What is **tegami** called in English?
- Tegami-wa Ei-go-de *letter* to ii-masu. **Tegami** is called letter in English.
- Door-wa Nippon-go-de nan to ii-masu ka? Oshie-te-kudasai. What is door called in Japanese? Please teach me.

Door-wa Nippon-go-de to to ii-masu. Door is called to in Japanese.

Kodomo-wa doko-ni i-masu ka, to Ei-go-de itte-kudasai. Will you say in English, "Where is the child?"

Kore-wa ikura-de su ka, to Ei-go-de itte-kudasai. Will you say in English, "How much is this?"

Sono hito-wa, kore-wa juu-go-yen-de su, to ii-mashita. He said that it was fifteen yen.

LESSON 39

Complex Sentences with When and Where



Examples:

O-kyaku-ga ki-mashita toki-ni, sono hito-wa
uchi-ni i-mashita.

When the guest came, he was at home.

Sono hito-ga motte-i-masu mono-wa handobagu-
de su.

That which she is holding is a handbag.

The above examples may be thought as derived from
the following sentences:—

O-kyaku-ga ki-mashita; sono toki-ni sono hito-
wa uchi-ni i-mashita.

*The guest came; at that time she was at
home.*

Sono hito-ga aru mono-wo motte-i-masu; sono
mono-wa handobagu-de su.

*She is holding a certain thing; that thing
is a handbag.*

Note that *toki-ni* is not the equivalent of the English
when; *toki-ni* means *at that time*, and the equivalent
of *when* is simply missing in the Japanese sentence.
One may as well say, O-kyaku-ga ki-mashita hi-ni,
sono hito-wa uchi-ni i-mashita (*On the day the guest
came, she was at home*).

Vocabulary:

toki

time

tokoro

place, position

genkan

entrance hall

oku-san	<i>mistress, wife</i>
o-kyaku	<i>guest</i>
zoori	<i>sandals</i>
haki (haite-i-masu)	<i>put on the feet, wear</i>
geta	<i>wooden clogs</i>
kutsu	<i>shoes</i>
ki	<i>wood, tree</i>
dan	<i>steps, stairs</i>
ishi	<i>stone</i>
e	<i>picture</i>
tsuitate	<i>a standing screen</i>
hairi (haitte-i-masu)	<i>enter</i>
tori (totte-i-masu)	<i>take, take off</i>
sayonara	<i>good-bye</i>

Exercises:

Kore-wa rippa-na uchi-no genkan-de su.	This is the entrance hall of a fine house.
Tatami-ni suwatte-i-masu hito-wa kono uchi-no oku- san-de su.	The person who is sit- ting on the tatami is the mistress of the house.
Hidari-ni tatte-i-masu hito- wa o-kyaku-de su.	The person who is standing on the left is the guest.
O-kyaku-wa zoori-wo haite- i-masu.	The guest is putting on the sandals.
O-kyaku-ga haite-i-masu mono-wa zoori-de su.	That which the guest is putting on are the sandals.

- Zoori-no hidari-ni ari-masu
mono-wa geta-de su. The things which are at
the left of the sandals
are the wooden clogs.
- Geta-no soba-ni ari-masu
mono-wa kutsu-de su. The things which are at
the side of the wooden
clogs are the shoes.
- Nippon-no hito-wa uchi-ni
hairi-masu toki-ni, zoori-
wo tori-masu. When the Japanese peo-
ple enter a house, they
take off the sandals.
- Nippon-no hito-wa genkan
kara hairi-masu toki-ni,
zoori-wo tori-masu; When the Japanese
people enter (a house)
through the entrance
hall, they take off the
sandals.
- Soshite uchi kara de-te-iki-
masu toki-ni, zoori-wo
haki-masu. And when they go out
from the house, they
put on the sandals.
- Soshite genkan kara de-te-
iki-masu toki-ni, zoori-wo
haki-masu. And when they go out
of (the house) through
the entrance hall, they
put on the sandals.
- Nippon-no uchi-no naka-wa
itsumo kirei-de su. The inside of a Japanese
house is always clean.
- Oku-san-no ushiro-ni ari-
masu kirei-na e-wa nan-de
su ka? What is that beautiful
picture behind the
mistress?
- Sore-wa tsuitate-no e-de su. That is the picture on
the standing screen.
- Kore-wa taihen rippa-na
tsuitate-de su. This is a very fine
standing screen.
- Tsuitate-ga ari-masu tokoro-
wa tatami-no heya-de su. The place, where the
screen is, is a room
with reed mats.
- O-kyaku-ga tatte-i-masu
tokoro-wa ki-no dan-de su. The place, where the
guest is standing, is
a wooden step.

Kutsu to geta to zoori-ga ari-masu tokoro-wa ishi- no dan-de su.	Where the shoes and wooden clogs and sandals are is the stone step.
Ki-no dan-no ue-ni ki-no to- ga ari-masu.	Above the wooden step there are wooden doors.
Oku-san-wa ki-no to-no naka-ni i-masu.	The mistress is inside the wooden doors.
Garasu-no to-ga ishi-no dan- no mae-ni ari-masu.	There is a glass door in front of the stone step.
Keredomo garasu-no to-wa kono e-ni ari-masen.	But the glass door is not in this picture.
Oku-san to o-kyaku-wa sayonara to itte-i-masu.	The mistress and the guest are saying, "Good-bye."
O-kyaku-wa kaeri-masu toki-ni, sayonara to ii- masu.	The guest says "Good- bye" when she goes back.

LESSON 40

Use of Verbs without Masu; Past

Examples:

Watakushi-ga mi-ta uchi-wa taihen yoi uchi-de
shita.

*The house which I looked at was a very good
house.*

O-kyaku-ga kita toki-ni, sono hito-wa uchi-ni
i-mashita.

When the guest came, she was in the house.

The auxiliary verb **masu** gives respectfulness to an expression, and its use enables one to employ all verbs without the knowledge of their inflexions. And so I have been able to leave off the study of verbs through quite an advanced lessons in complex sentences.

In actual usage, however, more than one **masu** in a sentence is too cumbersome and sometimes makes it sound excessively polite. And so we will begin with the inflexion of different verbs and learn the expressions more usually employed in daily speech. This does not mean that those sentences in Lesson 37, 38 and 39 are not idiomatic. There is no expression in this book which is not recommended for actual use. There should be at least one **masu** in a sentence usually at the end to give respectfulness.

Let us begin with the Past Forms of a few verbs and their euphonic changes:—

yonda (yomi-ta)	<i>read</i>
itta (iki-ta)	<i>went</i>
kaetta (kaeri-ta)	<i>returned</i>
tsukatta (tsukai-ta)	<i>used, employed</i>
kaita (kaki-ta)	<i>wrote</i>
shimatta (shimai-ta)	<i>finished</i>
kudasatta (kudasari-ta)	<i>gave</i>
atta (ari-ta)	<i>was, were</i>
mi-ta	<i>saw</i>
ake-ta	<i>opened</i>

ki-ta	came
shi-ta	did, played
i-ta	was, were
age-ta	gave
oboe-ta	remembered, learned
oshie-ta	taught

Key Word:

-ta	verb ending for past
-----	----------------------

Vocabulary:

oboe	learn, remember
"tenisu"	tennis
"beesu booru"	base ball
shi	do (play)

Verbs in succession are to be treated as a unit exactly as when used with *masu*. For instance: *ake-te-mi-ta* (*opened and saw—examined inside*); *motte-ki-ta* (*brought*) etc.

Exercises:

Anata-ga motte-ki-ta mono-wa nan-de su ka?	What is the thing which you brought?
Watakushi-ga motte-ki-ta mono-wa kore-de su.	What I brought is this.
Tenisu-wo shi-ta hito-wa donata-de su ka?	Who is the person that played tennis?
Tenisu-wo shi-ta hito-wa watakushi-de su.	I am the person who played tennis.

- Anata-wa kono to-wo ake-te-mi-mashita ka? Did you open and look in this door?
- Iie, kono to-wo ake-te-mi-ta hito-wa watakushi-de arimasen. No, I am not the person who looked in this door.
- Watakushi-ga age-ta hon-wa doko-ni ari-masu ka? Where is the book which I gave (you)?
- Anata-ga kudasatta hon-wa koko-ni ari-masu. The book which you give me is here.
- Koko-ni atta isu-wa doko-ni iki-mashita ka? Where did the chair, which was here, go?
- Niwa-ni i-ta inu-wa doko-ni iki-mashita ka? Where did the dog which was in the yard go?
- Smith-san-wa kinoo Tōkyō-ni itte-ki-ta to ii-mashita. Mr. Smith said that he made a trip to Tōkyō yesterday.
- Smith-wa tegami-wo kaite-shimatta to ii-masu. Smith says he has finished writing the letter.
- Kono hito-wa Ei-go-wo wasure-te-shimatta to ii-masu. This man says that he has forgotten English.
- Anata-ga beesu-booru-wo shi-te-i-ta toki-ni, watakushi-wa hon-wo yonde-i-mashita. When you were playing baseball, I was reading a book.
- Watakushi-ga kinoo itta tokoro-wa Tōkyō-de su. Where I went to yesterday is Tōkyō.
- Inu-wa niku-wo tabe-te shimatta, keredomo gohan-wo tabe-masen-deshita. The dog ate up the meat, but did not eat the rice.

LESSON 41

Use of Verbs without Masu; Present

Examples:

Sono hito-ga motte-iru mono-wa handobagude su.

The thing which that person is holding is a handbag.

Yomu hon-wo kudasai.

Please give me a book to read.

The Present Form is sometimes called the Infinitive of the Japanese verbs, for as it is seen in the second of the above examples, **yomu hon** may very well be translated *book to read*, although grammatically it is **watakushi-ga yomu hon** (*the book which I should read*) with the subject understood. Also, this Present Form is like the English Infinitive in that it is regularly used in designating a verb; for instance, we may say "The verb *to read* is **yomu** in Japanese."

There are two types of inflexions among the Japanese verbs besides the irregular. One is that of **yomu** in which the last vowel is **u** for the Present and **i** when followed by **-masu** or **-ta**, as **yomi-masu** and **yomi-ta** (*yonda*). The other is that of **iru** which takes **ru** for the Present and nothing when followed by **-masu** or **-ta** as **i-masu** and **i-ta**.

Verbs of Group I

Verb Stem	Present	Past	
yom	yomu	yonda (yomi-ta)	<i>read</i>
kak	kaku	kaita (kaki-ta)	<i>write</i>
ik	iku	itta (iki-ta)	<i>go</i>
kaer	kaeru	kaetta (kaeri-ta)	<i>return</i>
hair	hairu	haitta (hairi-ta)	<i>enter</i>
tsuka	tsukau	tsukatta (tsukai-ta)	<i>use</i>
shima	shimau	shimatta (shimai-ta)	<i>finish</i>
kudasar	kudasaru	kudasatta (kudasari-ta)	<i>give</i>

Verbs of Group II

Verb Stem	Present	Past	
i	iru	i-ta	<i>be</i>
ake	akeru	ake-ta	<i>open</i>
mi	miru	mi-ta	<i>see</i>
age	ageru	age-ta	<i>give</i>
tabe	taberu	tabe-ta	<i>eat</i>
oboe	oboeru	oboe-ta	<i>learn</i>
oshie	oshieru	oshie-ta	<i>teach</i>

Irregular Verbs

	Present	Past	
	kuru	ki-ta	<i>come</i>
	suru	shi-ta	<i>do</i>
	aru	atta (ari-ta)	<i>be</i>

The above three are about all the irregular verbs in the whole language. The verb *aru* is irregular in its negative form which will be seen later.

One may inquire how some of the verb stems, e. g. *yom*, *kak* or *kaer*, are to be pronounced. They are not to be pronounced, and they cannot be written in kana, the Japanese syllabary. I have adopted a new grammar made possible by the use of Romaji, because it makes the explanation of verbs much simpler. Indeed, I believe that Romaji is much more natural and suitable means of writing the Japanese language than the native kana.

Exercises:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tatami-ni suwatte-iru hito-wa oku-san-de su. | The person who is sitting on the tatami is the mistress. |
| Hidari-ni tatte-iru hito-wa o-kyaku-de su. | The person standing on the left is the guest. |
| Geta-no soba-ni aru mono-wa kutsu-de su. | The things which are by the wooden clogs are the shoes. |
| Nippon-no hito-wa uchi-ni hairu toki-ni, zoori-wo tori-masu; | Japanese people take off the sandals when they enter a house; |
| Soshite uchi kara de-te-iku toki-ni, zoori-wo haki-masu. | And when (they) go out of the house, (they) put on the sandals. |
| Koko-ni aru mono-wa nan-de su ka? | What is the thing which is here? |
| Soko-ni aru mono-wa hako-no futa-de su. | The thing which is there is a lid of a box. |

Teeburu-no ue-ni taberu Is there (any) thing to
mono-ga ari-masu ka? eat on that table?

lie, taberu mono-wa ari- No, (there) is not (any)
masen. thing to eat.

Watakushi-wa kaku toki-ni, When I write, I always
itsumo enpitsu-wo tsukai- use a pencil.
masu.

Watakushi-wa Tōkyō-ni iku When I go to Tōkyō,
toki-ni, densha-ni notte- I go in electric car.
iki-masu.

LESSON 42

Use of Verbs without Masu; Future

Example:

Watakushi-wa hon-wo yomoo to omoi-masu.

I think I will read a book.

In the above example one of the two subjects is understood. To be grammatically complete it should be: **Watakushi-wa hon-wo yomoo to watakushi-wa omoi-masu.** But it is awkward to repeat a long word like **watakushi** twice in a single sentence.

The use of Future in the Japanese language has been fully explained in Lessons 21 and 22. One may regard that **yomoo** is a shortened form of **yomi-mashoo** with the meaning and uses quite alike.

Verbs of Group I

Verb Stem	Present	Future	
yom	yomu	yomoo	<i>read</i>
kak	kaku	kakoo	<i>write</i>
ik	iku	ikoo	<i>go</i>
kaer	kaeru	kaeroo	<i>return</i>
hair	hairu	hairoo	<i>enter</i>
tsuka	tsukau	tsukawoo	<i>use</i>
shima	shimau	shimawoo	<i>finish</i>
kudasar	kudasaru	kudasaroo	<i>give</i>
omo	omou	omowoo	<i>think</i>
hajimar	hajimaru	hajimaroo	<i>begin</i>
asob	asobu	asoboo	<i>play</i>
hashir	hashiru	hashiroo	<i>run</i>

Verbs of Group II

i	iru	iyoo	<i>be</i>
ake	akeru	akeyoo	<i>open</i>
mi	miru	miyoo	<i>see</i>
age	ageru	ageyoo	<i>give</i>
tabe	taberu	tabeyoo	<i>eat</i>
oboe	oboeru	oboeyoo	<i>learn</i>
oshie	oshieru	oshieyoo	<i>teach</i>

Irregular Verbs

kuru	koyoo	<i>come</i>
suru	shiyoo	<i>do</i>
aru	aroo	<i>be</i>

Key Words:

—oo, —woo Future endings for verbs of Group I

—yoo Future ending for verbs of Group II

To form Future Form of the verbs of Group I, and oo to the stem; when the stem ends in a vowel, use woo for euphonic reasons. For the verbs of Group II, add yoo to the stem.

Vocabulary:

naka-yoshi	good friends (naka = between, yoshi = yoi)
kuchi-e	frontispiece (kuchi = opening, e = picture)
hanashi	story (hanashi-wo suru = to tell story)
omou	to think
onna	woman, female
onna-no ko	girl
otoko-no ko	boy
ko	child = kodomo
hashiru	to run (hashitte-iru)
hayaku	early, quick
hajimaru	to begin
asobu	to play (asonde-iru)

Exercises:

Kono hon-no kuchi-e-wo ake-te-mi-te-kudasai.	Please open and look at the frontispiece of this book.
Watakushi-wa kuchi-e-no hanashi-wo shiyoo to omoi-masu.	I think I will tell the story of (talk about) the frontispiece.

Kore-wa san-nin-no onna-no ko no e-de su.	This is a picture of three girls.
Kore-wa hashitte-iru onna-no ko-no e-de su.	This is a picture of girls who are running.
Kono e-no naka-ni otoko-no ko-wa i-masen.	In this picture there are no boys.
Anata-wa, kodomo-ga hashitte-iru tokoro-wa doko-de aroo to, omoi-masu ka?	Where do you think is the place where the children are running?
Sore-wa gakkoo-no niwa-de su.	That is a school yard.
Kono san-nin-wa naka-yoshi-de su.	These three are good friends.
Kono gakkoo-no onna-no ko-wa itsumo naka-yoshi-de su.	The girls of this school are always good friends.
Hidari-ni iru ko-ga "sono ki made hashiroo" to ii-mashita.	The child who is on the left said, "Let us run to that tree."
Migi-no ko-ga ichi-ban mae-ni hashitte-i-masu.	The child on the right is running foremost.
Ichi-ban migi-ni iru ko-ga ichi-ban chiisaku aroo to omoi-masu.	(I) think that the child who is on the extreme right is the smallest.
Nippon-no kodomo-wa asa hayaku gakkoo-ni iki-masu;	The Japanese children go to school early in the morning;
Soshite gakkoo-ga hajimaru mae-ni asobi-masu.	And before the school begins (they) play.

Gakkoo-ga hajimaru jikan-wa hachi-ji-de su.	The time when the school begins is eight o'clock.
Keredomo shichi-ji mae-ni takusan-no kodomo-ga gakkoo-ni ki-te-asonde-i-masu.	But before seven o'clock many children come and are playing at school.
Asa hayaku asobu koto-wa yoi koto-de su.	To play early in the morning is a good thing.
Watakushi-wa ashita-no asa shichi-ji-ni gakkoo-ni itte-miyoo to omoi-masu.	I think I will go to school and see at seven o'clock tomorrow morning.
Soshite asonde-iru kodomo-wo miyoo to omoi-masu.	And I think I will watch the children who are playing.

LESSON 43

Present Negative without Masu

Examples:

Sore-wo ake-nai-de kudasai.

Please do not open that.

Watakushi-wa moo gakkoo-ni ika-nai to ii-mashita.

I said that I do not go to school any more.

Key Words:

—a	ending for verbs of Group I
-nai	not, do not

To form Present Negative the verbs of Group I takes the ending **a** and the auxilliary verb **-nai** is attached to it. When the stem ends in a vowel, the euphony requires **a** to be **wa**. For verbs of Group II **-nai** is attached directly to the verb stem.

Refer to Lesson 28 where we first had **Ake-nai-de-kudasai**. The connective **-de** is a euphonic variation of **-te**. It is easier to pronounce **nai-de** than **nai-te**.

With the use of **-nai** one can form a larger variety of verbs in succession:

motte-ko-nai	<i>do not bring</i>
mota-nai-de-kuru	<i>come without carrying</i>
shi-te-mi-nai	<i>do not try</i>
shi-nai-de-miru	<i>do not do and see (see what it will be like if one does not do)</i>
shi-te-i-nai	<i>be not doing</i>
shi-nai-de-iru	<i>do not do and be (stay inactive)</i>
etc.	

In Lesson 27, *Please do not give me a book* was left off, because the negation without the use of **masu** was beyond our scope then. Now it can be shown:

Hon-wo kudasara-nai-de kudasai.

*Please do not give me the book (Give me the
favour of not giving the book).*

This is a cumbersome expression, but cumbersomeness itself implies politeness and conveys respect.

Verbs of Group I

Verb Stem	Present	Present Negative	
yom	yomu	yoma-nai	<i>read</i>
kak	kaku	kaka-nai	<i>write</i>
ik	iku	ika-nai	<i>go</i>
kaer	kaeru	kaera-nai	<i>return</i>
hair	hairu	haira-nai	<i>enter</i>
tsuka	tsukau	tsukawa-nai	<i>use</i>
shima	shimau	shimawa-nai	<i>finish</i>
kudasar	kudasaru	kudasara-nai	<i>give</i>
omo	omou	omowa-nai	<i>think</i>
hajimar	hajimaru	hajimara-nai	<i>begin</i>
asob	asobu	asoba-nai	<i>play</i>
hashir	hashiru	hashira-nai	<i>run</i>

Verbs of Group II

i	iru	i-nai	<i>be</i>
ake	akeru	ake-nai	<i>open</i>
mi	miru	mi-nai	<i>see</i>
age	ageru	age-nai	<i>give</i>
tabe	taberu	tabe-nai	<i>eat</i>
oboe	oboeru	oboe-nai	<i>learn</i>
oshie	oshieru	oshie-nai	<i>teach</i>

Irregular Verbs

kuru	ko-nai	<i>come</i>
suru	shi-nai	<i>do</i>
aru	nai	<i>be</i>

Note the peculiar irregularity of the verb **aru**.

Vocabulary:

moo	<i>already, any more</i>
mada	<i>yet</i>

Exercises:

Koko-ni takai hon-wa nai, keredomo yasui hon-wa ari-masu.	There is no expensive books here, but there are some cheap books.
Watakushi-wa mada kyoo-no shinbun-wo yoma-nai, keredomo anata-wa yomi-mashita ka?	I have not read today's newspaper, but did you read (it)?
Watakushi-wa moo yomi-mashita.	I have already read (it).
Kore-wa taisetsu-na hon-de nai, keredomo anata-wa kawoo to omoi-masu ka?	This is not an important book, but do you think you will buy it?
Kono shinbun-wo yonde-age-mashoo ka?	Shall I read this newspaper for you?
Iie, yoma-nai-de-kudasai.	No, please do not read it.
Sono hito-wa mada heya-ni iru to omoi-masu ka?	Do you think he is still in the room?
Sono hito-wa moo i-nai to omoi-masu.	I think he is not (there) any more.
Gakkoo-wa mada hajimari-masen ka?	Hasn't the school begun yet?
Gakkoo-wa mada hajimaranai to omoi-masu.	I think the school has not begun yet.

Gakkoo-wa moo hajimatta to omoi-masu.	I think the school has begun already.
Anata-wa hon-wo motte-konai to ii-mashita ka?	Did you say that you did not bring the books?
Soo-de su.	Yes.
Gakkoo-ni hon-wo mota-naide-kuru koto-wa yoku-nai koto-de su.	To come to school without carrying the books is not good.
Moo san-ji-de su. Gakkoo-ni mada kodomo-ga iru to omoi-masu ka?	It is already three o'clock. Do you think the child is still at the school?
Kodomo-wa moo i-nai to omoi-masu.	I think the child is not there any more.

LESSON 44

Past Negative and Future Negative

Examples:

Sono hito-wa Tōkyō-ni ika-nakatta to ii-masu.

He says he did not go to Tōkyō.

Sono hito-wa Tōkyō-ni ika-nakaroo to omoi-masu.

I think he will not go to Tōkyō.

Exactly as was with the Present Negative, the Past and Future Negatives are formed by adding **nakatta** or **nakaroo** to the **a** (or **wa**) ending of the verbs of Group I and to the stem of those of Group II.

Verbs of Group I

Verb Stem	Past Negative	Future Negative	
yom	yoma-nakatta	yoma-nakaroo	<i>read</i>
kak	kaka-nakatta	kaka-nakaroo	<i>write</i>
ik	ika-nakatta	ika-nakaroo	<i>go</i>
kaer	kaera-nakatta	kaera-nakaroo	<i>return</i>
hair	haira-nakatta	haira-nakaroo	<i>enter</i>
tsuka	tsukawa-nakatta	tsukawa-nakaroo	<i>use</i>
shima	shimawa-nakatta	shimawa-nakaroo	<i>finish</i>
kudasar	kudasara-nakatta	kudasara-nakaroo	<i>give</i>
omo	omowa-nakatta	omowa-nakaroo	<i>think</i>

Verbs of Group II

i	i-nakatta	i-nakaroo	<i>be</i>
ake	ake-nakatta	ake-nakaroo	<i>open</i>
mi	mi-nakatta	mi-nakaroo	<i>see</i>
age	age-nakatta	age-nakaroo	<i>give</i>
tabe	tabe-nakatta	tabe-nakaroo	<i>eat</i>
oboe	oboe-nakatta	oboe-nakaroo	<i>learn</i>
oshie	oshie-nakatta	oshie-nakaroo	<i>teach</i>

Irregular Verbs

ko-nakatta	ko-nakaroo	<i>come</i>
shi-nakatta	shi-nakaroo	<i>do</i>
nakatta	nakaroo	<i>be</i>

Vocabulary:

"bisuketto"	<i>biscuits</i>
sukoshi	<i>a little, a few, some</i>
sukoshi-mo	<i>(not) any</i>
okashi	<i>sweets, confectionery</i>

Sukoshi, which in its proper sense means *little* or *few*, is generally used for *some* although there is a proper word for *some*—**ikuraka**. This is another example of Japanese politeness in speech. One would never say, "Please give me some biscuits;" One would say, "Please give me a few biscuits" (**Bisuketto-wo sukoshi kudasai**.)

Exercises:

Todana-ni taberu mono-ga ari-masu ka?	Is there anything to eat in the cupboard?
Todana-ni taberu mono-wa nakaroo to omoi-ma su.	I think there is not anything to eat in the cupboard.
Kinoo bisuketto-ga takusan atta to omoi-masu.	I think there were many biscuits yesterday.
Ima sukoshi-mo nakaroo to omoi-masu.	I think there is not any now.
Bisuketto-ga hitotsu-mo ari-masen ka?	Isn't there (even) one biscuit?
Hitotsu-mo ari-masen. Kinoo kodomo-ga tabe-te-shimai-mashita.	There is not even one. The children ate them up yesterday.
Kodomo-wa tabe-nakatta to ii-masu.	The children say they did not eat.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Kodomo-wa soo takusan
tabe-nakaroo to omoi-
masu. | I think the children will
not eat so much. |
| Keredomo ima kono todana-
ni bisuketto-wa sukoshi-
mo ari-masen. | But now in this cup-
board there is not
any biscuits. |
| Nippon-no okashi-wa ari-
masen ka? | Isn't there any Japanese
cakes? |
| Hai, Nippon-no okashi-wa
takusan ari-masu. | Yes, there are plenty of
Japanese cakes. |
| Kodomo-ga kaeru mae-ni
sono okashi-wo tabe-
mashoo. | Let us eat those cakes
before the children
come back. |
| Kodomo-wa kinoo hayaku
kaera-nakatta, keredomo
kyoo hayaku kaeroo to
omoi-masu. | The children did not
come back early yes-
terday, but I think
they will come back
early today. |
| Anata-wa kore-wo tabe-te-
mi-mashita ka? | Did you try this? |
| Iie, watakushi-wa mada sore-
wo tabe-nakatta to omoi-
masu. | No, I think I have not
eaten that yet. |
| Anata-ga taberu mae-ni
sore-wo sukoshi kudasai. | Please give me some of
that before you eat. |
| Kono okashi-wo mada age-
nakatta to omoi-masu;
sukoshi age-mashoo ka? | I think I have not given
(you) this cake yet;
shall I give you some? |
| Mada kudasara-nakatta to
omoi-masu. Sukoshi kuda-
sai. | I think (you) have not
given me (it) yet.
Please give me some. |

LESSON 45

Inflexion of Verbs

Let us tabulate all the different forms of verbs we have so far studied, and we shall see the inflexion of Japanese verbs.

Inflexion of Yomu, a Verb of Group I

Verb Stem	Verb Ending	Words that Follow
	a (wa)	{ nai nakatta nakaroo <i>and inflexions of Nai</i>
yom	i	{ masu mashita mashoo ta te-iru <i>and verbs, auxiliary verbs, adverbs</i>
	u	{ toki hito <i>and nouns and pro-nouns. Also this ending may end a sentence.</i>
	e	(command)
	oo (woo)	(future)

Japanese verbs do not inflect according to tense and mood or voice as all the European verbs do though they fulfil the same purpose. The Japanese verbs inflect according to the words that follow them. And those of Group I have five endings which happen to be the five letters of the vowels.

The first ending **a** is used when the negative words follow, as **yoma-nai**, etc. If the verb stem ends in a vowel, **wa** is employed, as **omowa-nai**.

The second ending **i** is used when "operative" words such as verbs, auxiliary verbs, or adverbs follow, as **yomi-masu**, **yomi-ta** (*yonda*), **yonde-iru**, etc. An example of an adverb following, which we have not had, is **yomi-nagara** (*while reading*).

The third ending **u** is used when nouns follow or when there is no word to follow and sentence ends, as **yomu hito** (*a man to read*) or **Watakushi-ga yomu** (*I read*).

The fourth ending **e** is imperative, or command, which may be used in a quotation, as **Sono hito-wa "Kore-wo yome" to ii-mashita**, (*He said, "Read this."*) This type of sentences has not been taken up so far, because in actual usage a request—**kudasai**—is preferred to a command.

The fifth and the last ending **oo** (or **woo**) is Future. Its use is quite like the third ending **u**; it may be followed by nouns or it may end a sentence.

Inflexion of Akeru, a Verb of Group II

Verb Stem	Verb Ending	Words that Follow
	—	{ <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> nai nakatta nakaroo <i>and inflexion of Nai</i> </div>
ake	—	{ <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> masu mashita mashoo ta te-iru <i>and verbs, auxiliary verbs, adverbs</i> </div>
	ru	{ <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> toki hito <i>and nouns and pro- nouns. Also this ending may end a sentence.</i> </div>
	ro	(command)
	yoo	(future)

The verbs of Group II lack the first two of the endings, and the words that follow are attached directly to the verb stem. Otherwise the usage is quite like that of the verbs of Group I.

The three irregular verbs, which change the stem as well as the endings, go through the inflexions as follows:

ko-	ki-	kuru	koi	koyoo	<i>come</i>
shi-	shi-	suru	shiro	shiyoo	<i>do</i>
—	ari-	aru	are	aroo	<i>be</i>

The peculiarity of *aru* is that its negative forms are simply *nai*, *nakatta*, *nakaroo* etc. (is not, was not, will not be, etc.) without the stem or ending usual with all other verbs. Otherwise *aru* is quite regular in its inflexion.

In writing these lessons the writer endeavoured most to make things simple and clear. He is quite aware that the above inflexions of verbs do not conform exactly to the etymological grammar of the Japanese language. Those students who advance into the studies of classical Japanese, or those who look into the traditional grammar, will find that the verbs should have six endings instead of five and that the Future Form do not belong where it is seen in the above tables. However, the above tables are correct as far as the spoken language is concerned. This is mentioned simply for the purpose of telling that the Japanese was once a very complicated language which in course of time simplified itself, and that there still remain a good deal of undigested inconsistencies.

This writer has a certain idea in spelling the Romaji according to the usage of kana so as to maintain a connection between the spoken and the classical Japanese. For instance, the Future Ending

may be spelled *au*, as *yomau* and pronounced *yomoo*. This will simplify the subsequent study of *kana* and their uses, and also the more advanced studies in the classical Japanese. But the idea is not yet ripe, and he has decided to spell the *Romaji* of this book according to the pronunciation.

The inflexion of the verb *tatsu* which belongs to Group I goes as follows:

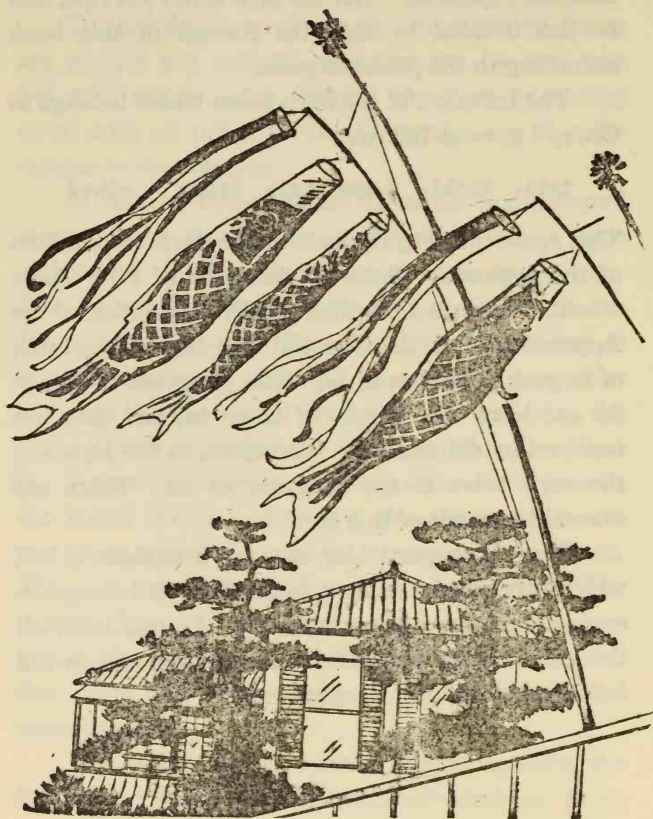
tata- tachi- tatsu tate tatoo stand

This apparent irregularity is due to the pronunciation of the Japanese. Refer to the table of Fifty Basic Sounds in Japanese Writing and Pronunciation of the Appendices (P. 172). You will find that the column of *ta* goes *ta chi tsu te to*. The Japanese language do not have the sounds of *ti* or *tu*, and they are replaced by *chi* and *tsu*. Therefore, to the Japanese the verb *tatsu* is not irregular at all. There are several instances of this sort.

There is no particular way for a student to tell which group of inflexion a Japanese verb belongs to except looking up in a dictionary. In this book all the verbs in the Vocabulary in the Appendices are indicated by the Roman numerals.

LESSON 46

Review Lesson



Koi-nobori

Vocabulary:

koi-nobori	<i>carp streamer (koi=carp)</i>
ageru	<i>to raise, to send up (verb of Group II)</i>
omatsuri	<i>festival</i>
musha-ningyoo	<i>warrior dolls (musha=warrior)</i>
oku	<i>to place (verb of Group I)</i>
tsuyoi	<i>strong (regular adjective)</i>
sakana	<i>fish</i>
naru	<i>to become, to grow (verb of Group I)</i>
matsu	<i>pine</i>
tonari-no	<i>neighbouring (noun-adjective)</i>

Exercises:

Kore-wa koi-nobori-no e-de su.	This is the picture of carp streamers.
Koi-nobori-wo ageru hi-wa Go-Gatsu Itsuka-de su.	The day when (they) raise the carp streamers is May fifth.
Go-Gatsu Itsuka-wa otoko-no ko-no omatsuri-no hi-de su.	May fifth is the day of festival for boys.
Kodomo-wa tokonoma-ni musha-ningyoo-wo oki-masu;	The children place the warrior dolls in the alcove;
Soshite niwa-ni koi-nobori-wo age-masu.	And raise the carp streamers in the yard.
Koi-wa tsuyoi sakana-de su.	Carp is a strong fish.
Kodomo-wa koi-nobori-wo miru toki-ni tsuyoku naroo to omoi-masu.	When the children look at the carp streamers they think they will grow strong.

Kodomo-wa musha-ningyoo-
wo miru toki-ni tsuyoi hito
ni naroo to omoi-masu.

When the children look
at the warrior dolls,
they think they will
become strong men.

Kono shashin-no koi-nobori-
no shita-ni aru ki-wa
matsu-no ki-de su.

The tree which are un-
der the carp stream-
ers of this photograph
are pine trees.

Nippon-no matsu-no ki-wa
taihen rippa-de su.

The Japanese pines are
very fine.

Nippon-no matsu-no ki yori
rippa-na ki-ga aroo to
omoi-masu ka?

Do you think there is
a tree finer than the
Japanese pine?

Kono uchi-ni otoko-no ko-ga
futari i-masu.

In this house there are
two boys.

Kono uchi-no hito-wa koi-
nobori-wo futatsu age-
mashita.

The people of this
house raised two carp
streamers.

Ue-no koi-wa ookii ko-no-
de-shoo, soshite shita-no
chiisai koi-wa chiisai ko-
no-de shoo.

The upper carp is prob-
ably for the bigger
boy, and the lower,
smaller carp is for
the little boy.

Migi-ni aru koi-wa tonari-no
uchi-no-de su.

The carp on the right
is of the neighbouring
house.

Tonari-no hito-wa kyonen
koi-wo age-nakatta, kere-
domo kotoshi age-mashita.

The people of the next
door did not raise the
carp last year, but
this year they did.

Kodomo-wa Go-Gatsu Itsu-
ka-ni yoi mono-wo taku-
san tabe-te-asobi-masu.

On May fifth children
eat a great deal of
good things and play.

Go-Gatsu Itsuka-wa yoi hi-
de su.

The Fifth of May is a
good day.

LESSON 47

Possibility: "I can read it." (1)

Examples:

Watakushi-ni sore-ga yom-are-masu.

I can read it (It is readable to me.)

Watakushi-ni sore-ga tabe-rare-masu.

*I can eat it.**Key Words:*

- ni** *to* (used after the person or thing which acts)
-ga, -wa used after the thing or person who receives the action
-are- *can* (used after the verbs of Group I)
-rare- *can* (used after the verbs of Group II)

-Are and **-rare** are auxiliary verbs. Both are attached to the verb stems, and they have inflexion quite similar to that of the verbs of Group II.

ending	words that follow
—	{ <div> nai nakatta nakaroo <i>and inflexion of Nai</i> </div>
yom-are-	{ <div> masu mashita mashoo masen ta -te-iru <i>and verbs, auxiliary verbs, adverbs</i> </div>
tabe-rare-	
tsuka-ware-	

ru	{ toki
	{ hito
	{ <i>and nouns. Also this ending may end a sentence.</i>
ro	(command)
yoo	(future)

When the verbs of Group I ends in a vowel, **-wareru** instead of **-areru** is used, as **tsuka-wareru** (*can use*), **shima-wareru** (*can finish*), etc.

As for the irregular verbs, they are as follows:

ko-rareru	<i>can come</i>
se-rareru or shi-rareru	<i>can do</i>
ar-areru	<i>can be</i>

Japanese is what is termed an agglutinative language, that is to say, it builds its words and grammatical forms by means of suffixes attached one after another to a stem. In fact a verb can have a long trail of suffixes and auxiliary verbs after it, reaching to the other end of a line. For instance:

Watakushi-wa sono toki sore-wo yonde-mi-te-i-rare-masen-deshita.

(At that time I could not be reading and examining it.)

Here is an expression without a subject:

Watakushi-ni ik-are-masu. *I can go.*

Here we see that sometimes a Japanese sentence is constructed without a subject. In fact, to a Japanese mind a subject in the sense of the European grammar is not a necessity. Also, **-wa** and **-ga** are not strictly the endings for the subject; they often serve as endings of emphasis. It is quite usual, though erroneous, to say: **Watakushi-wa ik-are-masu** (*I can go*), or **Watakushi-wa kore-ga yom-are-masu** (*I can read this*). This second sentence employs both **-wa** and **-ga** in a single sentence, but it sounds quite natural to a Japanese ear.

It is better for a student to learn the most correct and logical expressions in the beginning. And so, in these lessons all sentences which appear ungrammatical to a European mind will be avoided. A student, however, should be forewarned of a few peculiarities of the Japanese language.

Vocabulary:

hanasu	<i>to speak, to tell</i> (Group II)
sugu	<i>at once</i>
kara	<i>therefore, because</i>

Exercises:

Anata-ni Ei-go-ga hanas- Can you speak English?
are-masu ka?

Hai, watakushi-ni Ei-go-ga Yes, I can speak Eng-
hanas-are-masu. lish.

Anata-ni sugu ko-rare-masu Can you come at once?
ka?

- | | |
|--|--|
| Hai, ik-are-masu. Sugu iki-mashoo. | Yes, I can go. I will go at once. |
| Iie, Watakushi-wa gakkoo-ni iki-masu kara ima anata-no uchi-ni ik-are-masen. | No, I go to school, and so I cannot go to your house now. |
| Anata-wa kono hon-wo kyoo yonde-shima-ware-masu ka? | Can you finish reading this book today? |
| Kyoo watakushi-wa Yokohama-ni iki-masu kara kono hon-wo yonde-i-rare-nai to omoi-masu. | Today I go to Yokohama, therefore I think I cannot be reading this book. |
| Keredomo ashita yonde-shima-ware-yoo to omoi-masu. | But I think I can finish reading it tomorrow. |
| Watakushi-ni kono to-ga ake-rare-masen; anata-ni ake-rare-masu ka? | I cannot open this door; can you open it? |
| Hai, ake-rare-yoo to omoi-masu. | Yes, I think I can open it. |
| Kore-wa taihen ookii hako-de su keredomo anata-ni motte-ik-are-masu ka? | This is a very large box but can you carry it away? |
| Hai, motte-ik-are-mashoo. | Yes, I (probably) can. |
| Anata-wa koko-ni juu-ni-ji made i-rare-masu ka? | Can you be here till twelve o'clock? |
| Hai, i-rare-masu. | Yes, I can. |
| Sono hon-wo kudasai. | Please give me that book. |
| Kono hon-wa age-rare-masen. | I cannot give you this book. |

LESSON 48

Possibility: "I can read it." (2)

Examples:

Watakushi-ni sore-ga deki-masu.

I can do it.

Watakushi-ni sore-wo yomu koto-ga deki-masu.

I can read it. (To read is possible to me.)

Key Words:

-ni *to*

koto-ga *(that)*

dekiru *to be possible* (Verb of Group II)

Here is the second way to express Possibility. The two ways are employed quite indiscriminately, *yomareru* and *yomu koto-ga dekiru* having practically the same sense and meanings. *Dekiru* is a verb and unlike the auxiliary verbs, *-are* and *-rare*, it is used independently.

Exercises:

Anata-ni Ei-go-ga deki-masu Can you (speak) Eng-
ka? lish?

Hai, deki-masu. Yes, I can.

Anata-ni sugu kuru koto-ga Can you come at once?
deki-masu ka?

Hai, iku koto-ga deki-masu. Yes, I can go. I will go
Sugu iki-mashoo. at once.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Iie, watakushi-wa gakkoo-ni iki-masu kara ima anata-no uchi-ni iku koto-wa deki-masen. | No, I go to school, and so I cannot go to your house now. |
| Anata-wa kono hon-wo kyoo yonde-shimau koto-ga deki-masu ka? | Can you finish reading this book today? |
| Kyoo watakushi-wa Yokohama-ni iki-masu kara kono hon-wo yonde-iru koto-wa deki-nai to omoi-masu. | Today I go to Yokohama, therefore I think I cannot be reading this book. |
| Keredomo ashita yonde-shimau koto-ga deki-yoo to omoi-masu. | But I think I can finish reading it tomorrow. |
| Watakushi-ni kono to-wo akeru koto-ga deki-masen; anata-ni deki-masu ka? | I cannot open this door; can you? |
| Hai, deki-yoo to omoi-masu. | Yes, I think I can. |
| Kore-wa taihen ookii hako-de su keredomo anata-ni motte-iku koto-ga deki-masu ka? | This is a very large box, but can you carry it away? |
| Hai, deki-mashoo. | Yes, (probably) I can. |
| Anata-ni koko-ni juu-ni-ji made iru koto-ga deki-masu ka? | Can you be here till twelve o'clock? |
| Hai, iru koto-ga deki-masu. | Yes, I can be (here). |
| Sono hon-wo kudasai. | Please give me that book. |
| Kono hon-wa ageru koto-ga deki-masen. | I cannot give you this book. |

LESSON 49

Passive Voice

Example:

Tori-ga inu-ni tor-are-mashita.

The bird was taken (caught) by the dog.

Key Words:

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| -ga, -wa | ending for subject, one who receives the action |
| -ni | <i>by</i> , ending for one who acts |
| -areru | passive auxiliary verb used after verbs of Group I |
| -rareru | passive auxiliary verb used after verbs of Group II |

It is very strange, but interesting, to see that the Passive Form and Possibility employ quite the same words and construction. It is not impossible to take the above example to mean "The dog was able to catch the bird." **Watakushi-ni kore-ga yom-are-masu** can mean *I can read this* quite as well as *This is read by me*. **Kore-ga** may be placed before **Watakushi-ni** without any change in the meaning except emphasis.

However, no Japanese feel any inconvenience, for after all how much difference is there between *It is readable to me* and *It is read by me* when both are boiled down to their barest essence of meaning? Besides, some other verbs are usually employed along

with the Passive Form to make it easier to distinguish them. For instance:

Tori-ga inu-ni tor-are-te-shimai-mashita.

The bird had been caught by the dog.

This sentence cannot possibly mean, "The dog was able to catch the bird."

Vocabulary:

sensei	<i>teacher; also used as a title</i>
komaru	<i>to be troubled (verb of Group I)</i>
moo hitotsu	<i>one more, another</i>
kowasu	<i>to break (verb of Group I)</i>
tsukuru	<i>to make (verb of Group I)</i>

Exercises:

Kono hon-wa takusan-no hito-ni yom-are-mashita.	This book has been read by many people.
Watakushi-wa Smith Sensei-ni Ei-go-wo oshie-rare-mashita.	I was taught English by Prof. Smith.
Watakushi-wa, chiisaku atta toki-ni, kono hon-wo oshie-rare-mashita.	When I was little, I was taught this book.
Watakushi-wa, chiisaku atta toki-ni, Ei-go-wo oshie-rare-nakatta kara, ima komatte-i-masu.	Because I was not taught English when I was little, I am much troubled now.
Kono hon-wa takusan-no hito-ni yom-are-te-i-masu.	This book is being read by many people.

Ima ichi-ban takusan yom-
are-te-iru hon-wa nan-de
su ka?

What is the book which
is read most (widely)
now?

Anata-no uchi-wa koko kara
mi-rare-masu ka?

Is your house seen from
here? (Can one see
your house from
here?)

Hai, koko kara mi-rare-
masu.

Yes, it is seen from
here. (One can see it
from here.)

Kono hako-wa kodomo-ni
kawas-are-te-shimai-ma-
shita kara moo hitotsu
tsukutte-kudasai.

This box was broken
by the child, so please
make another.

Kinoo mado-garasu-ga ichi-
mai kawas-are-mashita,
soshite kyoo moo ichi-mai
kawas-are-mashita.

Yesterday one window
glass was broken, and
today one more was
broken.

LESSON 50

Causative: "I make him go"

Examples:

Watakushi-wa kodomo-wo gakkoo-ni ik-ase-masu.

I let the child go to school.

Watakushi-wa kodomo-ni gohan-wo tabe-sase-
masu.

I let the child eat some rice.

Key Words:

-wa

ending for person or thing which
causes the action

-wo	ending for person or thing which receives the action
-ni	ending for person or thing which is caused to act
-aseru	<i>let</i> auxiliary verb for Causative used after verbs of Group I
-saseru	<i>let</i> auxiliary verb for Causative used after verbs of Group II

The auxiliary verbs **-aseru** and **-saseru** are very much like **-areru** and **-rareru** in their uses and inflexions.

	Ending	Words that Follow
	—	{ <div> nai nakatta nakaroo <i>and inflexion of Nai</i> </div>
ik-ase tabe-sase tsuka-wase	—	{ <div> masu mashita mashoo ta te-i-masu <i>and negative forms of masu, verbs, auxiliary verbs, adverbs</i> </div>
	ru	{ <div> toki hito <i>and nouns. Also this ending may end a sentence</i> </div>
	ro	(command)
	yoo	(future)

Irregular verbs take the Causative as follows:

ko-saseru	<i>to let someone come</i>
saseru	<i>to let someone do</i>
ar-aseru	<i>to let someone be</i>

In fact the Causative form of the verb **suru** is the original of the Causative Auxiliary Verbs.

Let us examine some examples in which **saseru** and **-rareru** are used together:

Kodomo-wa okusan-ni gohan-wo tabe-sase-rare-mashita.

The child was forced to eat the meal by the mistress (though he was not hungry.)

This is a rather poor one, but it is meant to be an example of a Passive Causative. The combination in reverse order—Causative Passive—will be **tabe-rare-saseru** (*to cause something to be eaten*). A case for this latter combination would be rather rare except for such as causing a mouse to be devoured by a cat. Putting the case in the view point of mouse, this again can be made passive as **tabe-rare-sase-rareru** (*to be caused to be devoured*). This, I am afraid, is pushing our way too far beyond the scope of elementary Japanese. But I am simply showing the convenience of an agglutinative language which can express most intricate ideas by simple stringing of suffixes.

Also, it may be mentioned in passing that in Japanese it is quite usual to make passive of an

intransitive verbs, as *Watakushi-wa sono hito-ni ik-are-te-shimai-mashita* (*I was walked out on—He walked out on me*).

Vocabulary:

“toranku” *trunk, also suitcase*

“suteeshon” *railway station*

kisha *train*

Exercises:

Watakushi-wa kodomo-ni I let the child eat some
o-kashi-wo tabe-sase-ma- cakes.
shita.

Watakushi-wa kodomo-ni I let the child buy some
gakkoo-no hon-wo ka- school books.
wase-mashita.

Kono toranku-wo otoko-ni Shall I have the man
motte-ik-ase-mashoo ka? take this trunk over?

Hai, kore-wo suteeshon-ni Yes, please have this
motte-ik-ase-te-kudasai. carried to the station.

Kisha-no kippu-wo ka-wase- Let us have the train
mashoo. ticket bought.

Kono hako-wo watakushi-ni Please let me carry this
motte-ik-ase-te-kudasai. box.

Hai, kore-wo mot-ase-te-age- Yes, I will let you carry
mashoo. this.

Suteeshon made aruite-ik- Please let me walk to
ase-te-kudasai. the station.

Keredomo kono kodomo-wo But please do not let
aruk-ase-nai-de-kudasai. this child walk.

Kono toranku-wa taisetsu-de su kara, hito-ni motase-nai-de kudasai.	As this trunk is precious, please do not let any one (else) carry it.
Watakushi-wa densha-ni noru koto-ga deki-nakatta kara, uchi made aruk-ase-rare-mashita.	Because I could not get on the street car, I was forced to walk home.

LESSON 51

Regular Adjectives

Examples:

Kore-wa yoi.

This is good.

The above sentence has no verb in it, and we see that a Japanese sentence can be formed without a verb, and that a regular adjective can act as a predicate. This is a blunt expression somewhat in the nature of the use of verbs without *masu*, and it is generally used in subordinate clause only, as *Kore-wa yoi to omoi-masu* (*I think this is good*).

A regular adjective has an inflexion much like that of a verb:

Adjective Stem	Ending	Words that Follow
yo	ku	{ nai nakatta nakaroo naku ari-masu etc.

yo	ku	{	aru
			atta
		{	aroo
			are (Command)
			ari-masu
			and all verbs
	i	{	hito
			toki
			and all nouns. Also this ending can be used at the end of a sentence.
	kere		ba (Conditional)

Command, or Imperative, is lacking in the inflexion of adjectives. It is taken care of by the use of the verb **aru** after the **ku** ending—**yoku are** (*be good*).

There is no irregular inflexion among the Japanese adjectives.

Now, let us examine the use of adjectives according to their inflexions:

Kore-wa yoku-nai.

This is not good.

Kore-wa yoku ari-masu.

This is good.

Kono hito-wa yoku aruki-masu.

He walks well.

Kore-wa yoi hito-de su.

This is a good man.

Kore-wa yoi.

This is good.

Kore-ga yokereba, age-mashoo.

If this is good, I will give it to you.

As seen in the above examples, an adjective with **ku** ending acts as an adverb. There is no real distinction between adjectives and adverbs—when employed with **i** ending to modify a noun, it is an adjective, when employed with **ku** ending to modify a verb, or another adjective, it is an adverb. The ending **kere** is Conditional when followed by **ba**. There are other words to follow this ending, but their use is rare, and is not given in this lesson.

As for noun-adjectives, naturally there is no inflexion. When used as adjectives, they take **-na** or **-no** and when used as adverbs they take **-ni** or no ending at all:—

shinsetsu-na hito	<i>a kind man</i> (adjective use)
shinsetsu-ni hanasu	<i>to speak kindly</i> (adverbial use)
sukoshi-no pan	<i>a little bread</i> (adjective use)
sukoshi taberu	<i>to eat a little</i> (adverbial use)

Vocabulary:

tooi	<i>far</i> (regular adjective)
chikai	<i>near</i> (regular adjective)
omoshiroi	<i>interesting</i> (regular adjective)
hanashi	<i>a story</i>
hanasu	<i>to tell</i> (verb of Group I)
ko	<i>child</i> (short for <i>kodomo</i>)

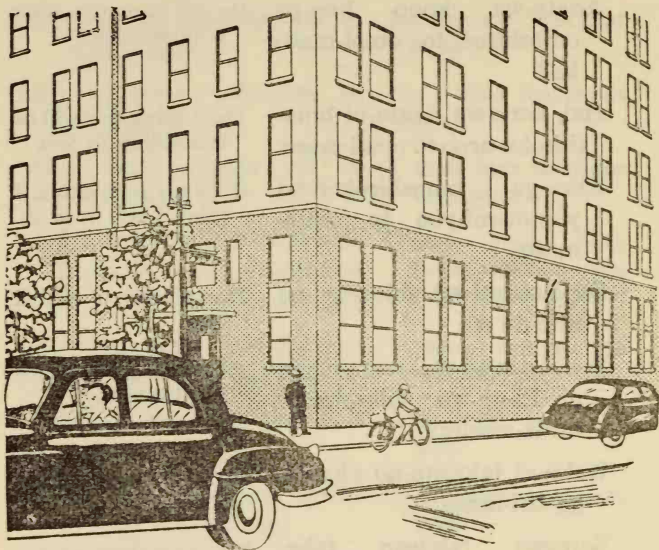
Exercises:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Kore-ga ichi-ban yoi to
omoi-masu ka? | Do you think this is
best? |
| Iie, sore-wa ichi-ban yoi to
omoi-masen. | No, I do not think that
is best. |
| Iie, sore-wa yoku-nai to
omoi-masu. | No, I think that is not
good. |
| Sore yori kore-ga yoi to
omoi-masu. | I think this is better
than that. |
| Kono mittsu-no hako-no
naka-de dore-ga ichi-ban
chiisai to omoi-masu ka? | Among these three
boxes which do you
think is the smallest? |
| Watakushi-wa kore-ga ichi-
ban chiisai to omoi-masu. | I think this is the
smallest. |
| Kono ko-wa yoku aruk-are-
masu. | This child can walk
well. |
| Kono ko-wa yoku aruku
koto-ga deki-masu. | This child can walk
well. |
| Kono hito-wa watakushi
yori hayaku aruku koto-
ga deki-masu. | This person can walk
faster than I. |
| Suteeshon-wa tooku ari-
masu ka, chikaku ari-
masu ka? | Is the station far or
near? |
| Suteeshon-ga tookereba,
densha-de iki-mashoo. | If the station is far, let
us go by the street
car. |
| Suteeshon-ga chikakereba,
aruite-iki-mashoo. | If the station is near,
let us go on foot. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| Suteeshon-wa tooku nakaroo
to omoi-masu kara aruite-
iki-mashoo. | I think the station is
not far, so let us go
on foot. |
| Anata-wa kono hon-ga
omoshiroi to omoi-masu
ka? | Do you think this book
is interesting? |
| Hai, kore-wa anata-ni omo-
shiroku-aroo to omoi-masu. | Yes, I think this will be
interesting to you. |
| Kore-ga omoshirokereba
yon-de-mi-yoo to omoi-
masu. | If this is interesting, I
think I will read it. |
| Sono sensei-wa shinsetsu-na
hito-de su. | That teacher is a kind
man. |
| Sono sensei-wa watakushi-
ni Ei-go-wo shinsetsu-ni
oshie-mashita. | That teacher taught me
English kindly. |
| Koko-ni takusan-no okashi-
ga ari-masu. | Here are a great deal
of cakes. |
| Sore-wo takusan tabe-
mashoo. | Let us eat them a great
deal. |
| Kore-wo kirei-na kami-ni
kirei-ni kaite-kudasai. | Please write this nicely
on a clean sheet of
paper. |

LESSON 52

I like; I want



Tōkyō-no machi

Examples:

Watakushi-wa hon-ga hoshii (hoshiku ari-masu.)

I want a book.

Watakushi-wa hon-ga yomi-tai (yomi-taku ari-masu.)

I want to read a book.

Watakushi-wa hon-ga suki-de su.

I am fond of a book.

Watakushi-wa hon-wo yomu koto-ga suki-de su.

I am fond of reading a book.

Key Words:

- hoshii *desirous of (to want)*; used after a noun
-tai *desirous of (to want to)*; used after a verb
suki *fond of (noun-adjective)*

Hoshii is a regular adjective and inflects as such—hoshiku, hoshii, hoshikere. -Tai is an auxiliary verb, but its inflexion is that of an adjective—taku, -tai, -takere. Suki is a noun-adjective.

Note that in the above examples, -wa and -ga are used in one sentence together. In Lesson 47 it was mentioned that -wa and -ga are often used as endings of emphasis. Here is a good example, for in the first of the above sentences, hon is the most important word and it should be emphasised above all other words though, according to the logic of European grammar, it is merely an object. If an emphasis is wanted on Watakushi, implying "I am the one who wants, etc.," -ga may be given to it and -wo to hon. Or -ga may be given to both of them.

Vocabulary:

machi	street, town
"birujingu"	building
kazoeru	to count (verb of Group II)
jimusho	office
jidoosha	motor car
jitensha	bicycle
kai	floor (as second floor)

Exercises:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Anata-wa Yokohama-ni iki-tai to omoi-masu ka? | Do you think you want to go to Yokohama? |
| Iie, watakushi-wa Yokohama-ni iki-taku ari-masen. | No, I don't want to go to Yokohama. |
| Watakushi-wa Tōkyō-ni itte-mi-tai to omoi-masu. | I think I want to go and see Tōkyō. |
| Koko-ni anata-no suki-na Tōkyō-no e-ga ari-masu. | Here is a picture of your favourite Tōkyō. |
| Ookii birujingu-no mae-ni hito-ga hitori aruite-i-masu. | In front of a big building, there is a man walking. |
| Kono birujingu-ni mado-ga ikutsu ari-masu ka, anata-ni kazoe-rare-masu ka? | How many windows there are to this building, can you count? |
| Kono e-ni jidoosha-ga ikutsu aru ka, anata-ni kazoe-rare-masu ka? | How many motor cars there are in this picture, can you count? |
| Watakushi-no jimusho-wa hachi-kai-ni ari-masu. | My office is on the eighth floor. |
| Watakushi-wa sono jimusho-ga taihen suki-de su. | I like that office very much. |
| Watakushi-wa sono jimusho-ni iku koto-ga taihen suki-de su. | I like to go to that office very much. |
| Kono e-no migi-ni aru jidoosha-wa watakushi-no-de su. | The motor car at the right of this picture is mine. |
| Anata-wa jidoosha-ga hoshiku ari-masen ka? | Don't you want a motor car? |

- Anata-wa jidoosha-ni nori-taku ari-masen ka? Don't you want to ride in a car?
- Anata-ga ima nori-takereba, nor-ase-te-age-mashoo. If you wish to take a ride now, I will let you.
- Anata-ga jitensha-ga hoshike-reba, ima katte-age-mashoo. If you want a bicycle, I will buy it for you now.
- Kodomo-ni okashi-ga tabe-sase-takereba, watakushi-no uchi-ni ko-sase-te kudasai. If you wish to let children eat some cakes, let them come to my house.
- Watakushi-wa hito-ni Tōkyō-no ookii machi-wo mi-sase-tai toki-ni, sono hito-wo jimusho-ni ko-sase-masu. When I wish to show people the big streets of Tōkyō, I let them come to my office.
- Watakushi-no jimusho kara machi-ga yoku mi-rare-masu. From my office one can see the streets well.

LESSON 53

If and Must

Examples (1):

Moshimo anata-ga kore-wo yomu naraba, yoi koto-wo oboe-mashoo.

If you read this, you will learn something good.

Moshimo anata-ga kore-wo yoma-nai naraba, yoi koto-wo oboe-nai-de shoo.

If you do not read this, you will not learn a good thing.

The idea of **if** is expressed by the combination of **moshimo** and **naraba**. The above examples show the full and proper form, but **moshimo** may be left out without impairing the meaning:—

Anata-ga kore-wo yomu naraba, yoi koto-wo oboe-mashoo. (and negative)

If you read this, you will learn something good. (and negative)

The presence of **moshimo** makes the sentence more emphatic.

There are several other sets of words to express conditional in Japanese, but here is given only one of them which has the widest applications. **Naraba** may be used in a sentence in which an adjective acts as predicate:—

Moshimo kono hon-ga omoshiroi naraba, yomi-mashoo.

If this book is interesting, I will read it.

The same idea can be expressed with practically no change in its shade of meaning by the use of conditional ending of the adjective itself:—

Moshimo kono hon-ga omoshirokereba, yomi-mashoo.

If this book is interesting, I will read it.

In many languages the Conditional employs past tense in expressing improbable or impossible ideas. One would say in English, "If I were a bird, etc." In Japanese the past tense is employed quite in the same way:—

“Moshimo watakushi-ga tori-de atta naraba, etc.”

The elementary instruction in the Japanese language designed for thirty hours should end about here. The subtle uses of Conditional is more in the nature of advanced studies, but an introduction to it has been included here for two reasons. Firstly to satisfy the curiosity of some students who look further forward than is required for the moment, and secondly because it leads up to the most important application of the Conditional in expressing the Obligation—*must*.

Examples (2):

Anata-wa sore-wo mi-nakereba nari-masen.

You must see it.

Anata-wa sore-wo mi-tewa nari-masen.

You must not see it.

Key Words:

moshimo—naraba	<i>if</i>
moshimo—kereba	<i>if</i>
-nakereba nara-nai (nari-masen)	<i>must</i>
-tewa nara-nai (nari-masen)	<i>must not</i>

-Nakereba is the conditional form of nai. Although nai is an auxiliary verb (and also a verb, the negative of aru), it has an inflexion of a regular adjective—naku, nai, nakere.

The original meaning of the verb, **naru** of **nari-masen** (nara-nai) is *to become*. In the above usage it means perhaps *nothing good will become of it*. And

so a literal translation of the first sentence may be *If you don't see it, nothing good will come of it or that won't do—You must see it.*

Since *must* is expressed by the negative form **-nakereba**, *must not* is expressed by the affirmative form **-tewa** which may be regarded as combination of the connective **-te** and the ending **-wa** which is often used after a subject implying *in the case of*. And so, it is easy to see that **-tewa** can mean *if*. The second of the above examples may be translated literally as *If you see it, that won't do—You must not see it.*

The Japanese language has no single word to correspond to *must*, and the only way to express the idea is by this round-about conditional sentence. However, to a Japanese who employs this expression constantly **-nakereba nari-masen** is no more than one word of eight syllables.

Vocabulary:

nochi-ni

later on

hoka-no

other, some other

Exercises:

Watakushi-wa ashita gak- I must go to school
koo-ni ika-nakereba nari- tomorrow.
masen.

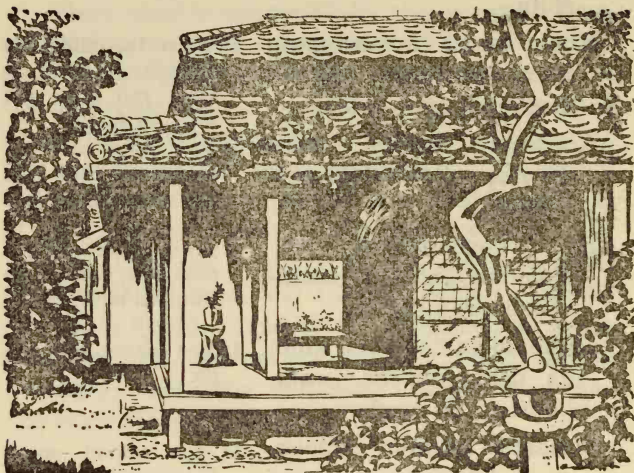
Anata-wa ashita gakkoo-ni You must not go to
ittewa nari-masen. school tomorrow.

Anata-wa kore-wo kirei-ni You must write this
kaka-nakereba nari-ma- nicely.
sen.

- Watakushi-wa kinoo kono hon-wo yonde-shimawa-nakereba nari-masen deshita. I had to finish reading this book yesterday.
- Kono ko-ga komari-masu kara, anata-wa hayaku aruite-wa nari-masen. Because this child has difficulty (walking fast), you must not walk so fast.
- Anata-ga ashita kuru naraba, yoi mono-wo age-mashoo. If you would come tomorrow, I will give you something nice.
- Ima Nippon-go-wo oboe-nakereba, anata-wa nochi-ni komari-mashoo. If you do not learn Japanese now, you will be troubled later on.
- Moshimo anata-ni iku koto-ga deki-nakereba, wata-kushi-ga iki-mashoo. If you cannot go, I will go.
- Moshimo anata-ni Nippon-go-ga deki-nakereba, kono jimusho-ni iru koto-wa deki-masen. If you cannot speak Japanese, you cannot be in this office.
- Anata-ga kono jimusho-ga suki-de nakereba, hoka-no jimusho-ni itte-kudasai. If you are not fond of this office, please go to some other office.
- Motto hayaku aruk-are-nakereba, anata-wa kisha-ni nor-are-masen deshoo. If you cannot walk faster, you will not be able to board the train.
- Gohan-ga nakereba, anata-wa pan-wo tabe-nakereba nari-masen deshoo. If there is no rice, you will have to eat some bread.

LESSON 54

Review Lesson



Lafcadio Hearn-no Uchi

Vocabulary:

sumu (sun-da = sumi-ta)	<i>to live, to reside</i> (verb of Group I)
naru	<i>to become</i> (Group I)
namae	<i>name</i>
oku-san	<i>wife, mistress of the house</i>
tame-ni	<i>in order that</i>
nagai	<i>long</i> (regular adjective)
Chuu-gakkoo	<i>Middle School</i>
ishi-dooroo	<i>stone lantern</i>

kabe	<i>wall</i>
kinen	<i>memorial</i>
Teikoku Daigaku	<i>Imperial University</i>
shinu	<i>to die (Group I)</i>

Exercises:

Lafcadio Hearn-wa Nippon-no koto-wo takusan kaita hito-de su.	Lafcadio Hearn is the man who wrote a great deal about things Japanese.
Hearn-wa Nippon-ga taihen suki-de shita kara nochi-ni Nippon-no hito-ni nari-mashita;	Hearn was fond of Japan very much, and so later he became a Japanese;
Soshite Nippon-no namae-wo tsukuri-mashita.	And he made up a Japanese name.
Lafcadio Hearn-no Nippon-no namae-wa Koizumi Yagumo to ii-masu.	Lafcadio Hearn's Japanese name is Koizumi Yagumo.
Koizumi-wa oku-san-no namae-de su.	Koizumi is his wife's name.
Oku-san-wa Nippon-no hito-de shita.	His wife was Japanese.
Hearn-wa Nippon-no koto-wo kaku tame-ni Sen Hap-pyaku Kyuu-juu Nen-ni Amerika kara ki-mashita.	In 1890 Hearn came from America in order to write about things Japanese.
Hearn-wa Nippon-ga suki-ni nari-mashita kara, Nippon-ni nagaku iru tame-ni gakkoo-no sensei-ni nari-mashita.	Hearn became fond of Japan, and so in order to stay in Japan long he became a teacher in a school.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Sono gakkoo-wa Matsue-no
Chuu-gakkoo-de shita. | That school was a Middle School in Matsue. |
| Sono toshi-no Juu-ni Gatsu-
ni Koizumi Setsuko-ga
oku-san-ni nari-mashita. | In December of that year Miss Setsuko Koizumi became his wife. |
| Kore-wa sono toki Hearn to
oku-san-ga sunda uchi-no
e-de su. | This is the picture of the house in which Hearn and his wife lived at that time. |
| Kore-wa chiisai uchi-de su,
keredomo yoi uchi-de su. | This is a small house, but it is a good house. |
| Niwa-no ki-no shita-ni ishi-
dooroo-ga ari-masu. | Under the tree in the garden there is a stone lantern. |
| Hidari-no kabe-no mae-ni
aru ikebana-ga mi-rare-
masu ka? | Can you see the flower arrangement in front of the wall on the left? |
| Kono uchi-wa Matsue-ni ari-
masu. | This house is in Matsue. |
| Machi-no hito-wa kono uchi-
wo Yagumo-no kinen-no
uchi to ii-masu. | The town people call this house the memorial house of Yagumo. |
| Hearn-no oku-san-wa Nip-
pon-no hanashi-wo taku-
san shi-mashita. | Mrs. Hearn told many Japanese stories. |
| Soshite Hearn-wa sore-wo
Ei-go-de kaki-mashita. | And Hearn wrote them in English. |
| Futari-ga kono uchi-ni sun-
de-i-ta toki-ni, takusan-no
hon-ga kak-are-mashita. | When the two were living in this house, many books were written. |

- Nochi-ni Hearn-wa Tōkyō-
no Teikoku Daigaku-no
sensei-ni nari-mashita;
Soshite Tōkyō-ni sumi-
mashita. Later on Hearn became
a teacher in the Im-
perial University of
Tōkyō.
And he lived in Tōkyō.
- Hearn-wa yoi sensei-de shita,
soshite rippa-na hito-de
shita; Hearn was a good
teacher and he was
a fine man.
- Soshite hon-wo yoku kaki-
mashita. And he wrote books
well.
- Hearn-wa Sen Kyuu-hyaku
Yo Nen-no Ku Gatsu Ni-
juu-roku Nichi-ni shini-
mashita. Hearn died on Septem-
ber 26th, 1904.
- Sono toki Hearn-wa go-juu-
go-de shita. At that time Hearn was
fifty-five.
- Soshite san-nin-no otoko-no
ko to hitori-no onna-no
ko-ga ari-mashita. And there were (he
had) three sons and
a daughter.
- Hearn-wa shinu made
Nippon-no koto-wo kaite-
i-mashita. Hearn was writing
about Japan until he
died.
- Moshimo sono toki-ni shina-
nakatta naraba, motto
takusan-no hon-wo kaita-
de shoo. If he did not die at
that time, he would
have written more
books.
-

Japanese Writing and Pronunciation

In writing, a Japanese employs Chinese characters and kana together. A Chinese character has its individual meaning as well as the sounds, and it is employed for nouns, verbs, adjectives and some "solid" words. A kana character carries a syllabic sound and is employed for endings, prepositions and such parts of less import. There are forty-eight letters in kana while there are a limitless number of Chinese characters. A Japanese typewriter has some 200 types on its type board and several hundred more in reserve. Chinese characters certainly make a great obstacle in the way of studying the written Japanese.

It is not impossible to write everything in kana, but that will betray the lack of education on the part of the writer. Indeed, the original meaning of the word kana is substitute letter, and the Chinese characters are considered real letters (*kanji*). Although the Chinese characters are difficult to learn, when they are learned and mastered, they make a most rapid reading possible; because they convey the meaning directly to the eyes without resorting to the "sound."

In this book, which is designed for an elementary instruction in spoken Japanese, only an introduction to kana will be given and the Chinese characters will

Japanese Writing and Pronunciation

In writing, a Japanese employs Chinese characters and kana together. A Chinese character has its individual meaning as well as the sounds, and it is employed for nouns, verbs, adjectives and such "solid" words. A kana represents merely a syllabic sound and it has no meaning of its own. It is employed for endings, post-positions and such parts of less import. There are forty-eight letters in kana while there are a limitless number of Chinese characters. A Japanese typewriter has some 2300 types on its type board and several hundred more in reserve. Chinese characters certainly make a great obstacle in the way of studying the written Japanese.

It is not impossible to write everything in kana, but that will betray the lack of education on the part of the writer. Indeed, the original meaning of the word **kana** is *substitute letter*, and the Chinese characters are considered *real letters* (**hon-ji**). Although the Chinese characters are difficult to learn, once they are learned and mastered, they make a most rapid reading possible, because they convey the meaning directly to the eyes without resorting to the "sound."

In this book, which is designed for an elementary instruction in spoken Japanese, only an introduction to kana will be given and the Chinese characters will

not be touched upon.

It is considered that there are fifty basic sounds in the Japanese language, and each of those sounds is represented by a kana. A table of those basic sounds and kana, generally called *Aiueo Table*, is given on the following page (Table I). There are some repetitions of sounds and kana because of the irregularity in the Japanese pronunciation, and in fact there are only forty-eight kana. Also, there are two pairs of kana—*い* (i) and *ゐ* (i) of the second tier, and *え* (e) and *ゑ* (e) of the fourth tier—which have the same sounds. In olden times their sounds were distinct, but they have been broken down in the course of time. The one extra sound *ん* (ん) is not counted in the table, because it does not constitute a syllable.

Note that there are two systems of kana. Those angular ones printed next to Romaji are called **kata kana** (stiff, formal kana) and those in curved lines printed below them are called **hira kana** (informal kana). The latter is in general use while the use of the former is somewhat in the nature of the italics in English.

These basic sounds are also called the *clear sounds* in contrast to those in Table II which are the *turbid sounds* (*nigori*). For instance, **ga gi gu ge go** are the turbid sound of **ka ki ku ke ko** and the turbidity is indicated by a sign of two dots on the upper right side of the kana. **pa pi pu pe po** are

called the *half turbid sounds* of **ha hi fu he ho** and are marked by a circle to each of the kana.

Table IV shows the compound sounds. **Kya** is supposed to be a composite of **ki** and **ya**, and **ya** is written in small letter to indicate that it is to be read as a compound sound. Table V contains the compound sounds made turbid.

Counting off the duplication caused by the irregularity in the Japanese pronunciation, one may see that there are 106 distinct sounds in the language. The method of writing every one of them in kana is indicated in the table. When Romaji is employed, there is no need of distinguishing between the basic sounds and the compound or turbid sounds.

TABLE I
Fifty Basic Sounds
A i u e o

a	ka	sa	ta	na	ha	ma	ya	ra	wa	n
ア	カ	サ	タ	ナ	ハ	マ	ヤ	ラ	ワ	ン
あ	か	さ	た	な	は	ま	や	ら	わ	ん
i	ki	shi (si)	chi (ti)	ni	hi	mi	i	ri	i	
イ	キ	シ	チ	ニ	ヒ	ミ	イ	リ	ヰ	
い	き	し	ち	に	ひ	み	い	り	ゐ	
u	ku	su	tsu (tu)	nu	fu (hu)	mu	yu	ru	u	
ウ	ク	ス	ツ	ヌ	フ	ム	ユ	ル	ウ	
う	く	す	つ	ぬ	ふ	む	ゆ	る	う	
e	ke	se	te	ne	he	me	e	re	e	
エ	ケ	セ	テ	ネ	ヘ	メ	エ	レ	ヱ	
え	け	せ	て	ね	へ	め	え	れ	ゑ	
o	ko	so	to	no	ho	mo	yo	ro	wo	
オ	コ	ソ	ト	ノ	ホ	モ	ヨ	ロ	ヲ	
お	こ	そ	と	の	ほ	も	よ	ろ	を	

TABLE II
Turbid Sounds

ga ガ が	za ザ ざ	da ダ だ	ba バ ば
gi ギ ぎ	ji (di) ジ じ	ji (di) ヂ ぢ	bi ビ び
gu グ ぐ	zu ズ ず	zu ヅ づ	bu ブ ぶ
ge ゲ げ	ze ゼ ぜ	de デ で	be ベ べ
go ゴ ご	zo ゾ ぞ	do ド ど	bo ボ ぼ

TABLE III
Half Turbid Sounds

pa パ ぱ
pi ピ ぴ
pu プ ぷ
pe ペ ぺ
po ポ ぽ

Note: The Romaji employed in this book is of Hepburn System, but in these tables the Japanese System also is given in parenthesis whenever its spellings differ from those of Hepburn System. The Japanese System is an attempt to make the spelling appear simpler and more logical to the Japanese people.

TABLE IV

Compound Sound

kya キャ きゃ	sha (sya) シャ しゃ	cha (tya) チャ ちゃ	nya ニャ にゃ	hya ヒャ ひゃ	mya ミャ みゃ	rya リャ りゃ
ki キ き	shi (si) シ し	chi (ti) チ ち	ni ニ に	hi ヒ ひ	mi ミ み	ri リ り
kyu キュ きゅ	shu (syu) シュ しゅ	chu (tyu) チュ ちゅ	nyu ニュ にゅ	hyu ヒュ ひゅ	myu ミュ みゅ	ryu リュ りゅ
ke ケ け	she (sye) シェ しえ	che (tye) チェ ちえ	ne ネ ね	hye ヒェ ひえ	me メ め	re レ れ
kyo キョ きょ	sho (syo) ショ しょ	cho (tyo) チョ ちょ	nyo ニョ にょ	hyo ヒョ ひょ	myo ミョ みょ	ryo リョ りょ

TABLE V

Turbid Compound Sounds

gya ギャ ぎゃ	ja (zya) ヂャ ジャ ぢゃ じゃ	bya ビャ びゃ
gi ギ ぎ	ji (di) ヂ ジ ぢ じ	bi ビ び
gyu ギュ ぎゅ	ju (zyu) ヂュ ジュ ぢゅ じゅ	byu ビュ びゅ
ge ゲ げ	je (zye) ヂェ ジェ ぢえ じゃ	be ベ べ
gyo ギョ ぎょ	jo (zyo) ヂョ ジョ ぢょ じょ	byo ビョ びょ

TABLE VI

Half Turbid Compound Sounds

pya ピャ ピャ
pi ピ ピ
pyu ピュ ピュ
pe ペ ペ
pyo ピョ ピョ

Foreign Words In the Japanese Language

The following list of foreign words in the Japanese language was compiled as a class work by the first year boys of Keio Middle School (Keiō Futsūbu) who were just beginning to study English. Therefore it is safe to assume that all the words in the list are understood and employed by the Japanese who has no knowledge of English as a language. It is surprising to find how many English words the Japanese have adopted without being conscious of it.

In the following list the Japanese pronunciations which have been too far changed from the original are indicated in the parenthesis. They are mostly the words adopted in very early days.

accent	asparagus
album	asphalt
alcohol	baby
all right (oorai)	back
aluminium (arumi <i>or</i> nyu- umu)	bacteria
amateur	bakery
announcer	balance
antenna	balcony
apartment (apaato)	ball
apron	banana
arc	band belt, brass band
arch	bar drinking place
	baseball

basket	bucket (baketsu)
basket ball	building
bat baseball bat	bus
battery electric	butter
bed	button (botan)
beefsteak (bifuteki)	
beer (biiru)	cabaret
bell	cabbage (kyabetsu)
belt	cable car
bench	cafe
best	cake
Bible	calendar
biscuit	camera
black list	camera man
blanket (ketto)	camouflage
boat	camp
boat house	can (kan)
boat race	candy
boiler	canoe
bonbon	captain
bonus	caramel
book	carbon paper
bourgeois	card
boxer	case container
boxing	catalogue
boy	catarrh (kataru)
boycott	catch ball
boy scout	cellophane
brake	celluloid
brandy	cement
broker	cigar
brush	cigar lighter

cigarette case	compass
chalk crayon	concrete
champion	condensed milk
chance	condition
chandelier	cook a cheff
change	copy
cheese	cork
cherry	corned beef
chewing gum	cosmos
chicken	count
chocolate	course
cholera	court as tennis court
chorus	cream
Christmas	croquette (korokke)
Christmas tree	cuff (kafusu)
chrome	cup sports trophy
cider	curtain
cinema (kinema <i>or</i> shine- ma)	curve (kaabu)
circus	cushion
class	cut illustration
classmate	cutlet (katsuretsu)
cleaning dry cleaning	cylinder
club association	dahlia
coach sports coach	dam
coal-tar	dance
cocktail	dancer
cocoa	deck
coffee (koohii)	delicate
coil	demonstration
collar	department store (depaa- to)
comma	

desk	fruit punch
diagram	fry
diamond	fry pan
Diesel	full speed
dock dry dock	fuse
doctor	
dollar	gaiter (geetoru)
door	gallon
double	game
double collar	gang gangster
dozen (daasu)	garage
drive	gas (gasu)
dry cleaning	gasoline
dry ice	gauze (gaaze)
dynamite	girl
	glass (garasu)
ebonite	glider
elevator	go traffic signal
enamel	goal
encore	golf link
engine	gorilla
episode	gossip
escalator	gram
	graph
fan as sports fan	grill Restaurant
feet unit of length	ground as base ball
film	ground
flannel	group
foot unit of length	guide
foot ball	guide book
fork	guitar
frock coat	

hair net	inflation
hall auditorium	influenza
ham	ink
hammer	iron (airon) flat iron
hammock	
handbag	jacket (jaketsu)
handkerchief (hankachi)	jam food
handle	jazz
harmonica	jelly
head-light	jump
heart of card game	
helmet	kangaroo
hike	khaki
hiking	kick
hint	king
hockey	kiss
home	knife
home run	knock
hook (hokku)	knock out
hose water hose	kodak
hot cake	
hotel foreign style hotel	lace
humour	lamp
hurdle	lead a verb
husband	leader
hysteria (histerii)	left
	lemon
ice	lens
ice cream	linen
ice hockey	linoleum
ice water	lion
inch	litre (rittoru)

lucky	mile
lunch	milk
macaroni	minus
machine (mishin) sewing	model
machine	modern
magnesium	monkey
magnet	morning coat
mamma	mosaic
manage a verb	motor
manager	motor boat
manikin	motto
mantle	muslin (mosurin)
marathon	napkin
march music	naphthalene
mark	necktie
market	neon sign
mascot	net
mask	new
mast	news
mat	nickel
medal	nicotine
megaphone	no
member	no count
memo	nonsense
mental test	note
meter (meetaa <i>or</i> meeto- ru)	notebook
metre (meetaa <i>or</i> meeto- ru)	number
microphone (maiku <i>or</i> maikurohon)	oblate (obraato)
	office
	oil

O. K.	pineapple
omelet (omuretsu)	ping pong
opera	pipe
orange	pistol
orchestra	piston
organ music	plan
overcoat (kooto <i>or</i> oobaa)	platform of railway sta- tion
overshoes	platinum (purachina)
ozone	play a sports term
page	pocket
pajama	pool swimming pool
pallet	pose
pamphlet	post post box
panorama	poster
pants	potato
papa	pound (pondo)
paper	prism
parachute	program
paraffin	proletariat
parasol	propeller
pass	pulp
pedal	pump (ponpu)
pen	putty (pate)
percent	pyramid
permanent wave	
pet	race sports
pianist	racket tennis
piano	radio (rajio)
picnic	radio drama (rajio dora- ma)
pin	
pincette	radium (rajuumu)

rail	rush hour
raincoat	
rayon	sabotage
ready	safe sports term
ready-made	sailor
rear-car	salon
record highest record,	sample
phonograph record	sandwich
regular	Santa Claus
relay	sauce
restaurant	sausage
review theatrical	scarf
rhythm	score
ribbon	score board
rice	scrap
rice curry	scrapbook
right	screen
rink sports	screw propeller
roast (roosu)	search-light
robbot	season
rocket	seesaw
Roentgen	sensation
roller	sensational
roller skate	sentimental
romance	service
romantic	set
rope	shawl
ruby	sheet
rucksack	shirt (shatsu) under shirt
Rugby	shovel
runner sports	shower -bath
running sports	show window

shutter	stew
sidecar	stock
sign	stop
silk hat	stopwatch
siren	stove
skate	straw tube
sketch	strawberry
sketch book	strike
ski	sweater
skirt	switch
slate	symbol
slipper	syrup
smart	
socket -game	table
soda	table speech
sofa	talkie
soft hat	tank reservoir, war ma-
soprano	chine
soup	tape
speed	taxi
speed up	team sports
spike	television
sponge	tennis
sports	tenor
spring steel spring	tent
spy	test
stage	text (tekisuto)
stamp	thank you
staple fibre (su fu)	tile
start	tip gratuity
station railway station	tire rubber tire
steam -heating	toast

tobacco	vaseline
toilet paper	veil
tomato	velvet
ton	veneer (beniya)
touch	violin
tourist bureau	vitamin (bitamin)
tournament	
towel	wafers
tractor	waffle
truck	Watt
trump card game	whisky
trunk also suit case	white shirt (waishatsu)
tulip	also striped or col-
tunnel (tonneru)	oured shirts
typewriter	wrestling
typist	
	yacht sail boat
umpire	yard (yaado <i>or</i> yaaru)
uniform	unit of length
utopia	yes
varnish (wanisu <i>or</i> nisu)	zero

Abbreviations

<i>n.</i>	noun
<i>vt.</i>	transitive verb
<i>vi.</i>	intransitive verb
<i>I.</i>	verb of Group I
<i>II.</i>	verb of Group II
<i>irr.</i>	irregular verb
<i>adj.</i>	regular adjective
<i>n-adj.</i>	noun-adjective
<i>(adj.)</i>	adjective use of other parts of speech
<i>adv.</i>	adverb
<i>auxil. v.</i>	auxiliary verb
<i>postp.</i>	postposition
<i>suf.</i>	suffix
<i>pref.</i>	prefix
<i>con.</i>	conjunction, connective
<i>pron.</i>	pronoun
<i>interj.</i>	interjection

Numerals in parenthesis indicate the lessons in which the words are explained.

Japanese-English Vocabulary

A

- abunai** *adj.* dangerous
abura *n.* oil; fat
agaru *vi. I.* to go up
ageru *vt. II.* to give; to send up, to raise (27, 46)
ago *n.* jaw
ai *n.* love
ai-rashii *adj.* lovely, charming
ai-rashisa *n.* loveliness
aisatsu *n.* greeting
aisatsu-suru *vi. irr.* to greet
ai-suru *vt. irr.* to love
aji *n.* taste
aka *n.* red. **akai** *adj.* red
akari *n.* light
akarui *adj.* light
akeru *vt. II.* to open (17)
ake-te-iku to leave something open (24)
aki *n.* autumn
akiru *vi. II.* to be tired of
aku *vi. I.* to open
amai *adj.* sweet (in taste)
amari *n.* remainder
amaru *vi. I.* to be left over
amasa *n.* sweetness (in taste)
ame *n.* rain
ami *n.* net
ana *n.* hole
anata *pron.* you (2)
ane *n.* elder sister
ani *n.* elder brother
annai *n.* guide, guidance
annai-suru *vt. irr.* to guide
anzen *n.* safety. **anzen-na** *n.-adj.* safe
ao *n.* blue. **aoi** *adj.* blue
arai *adj.* rough
ar-areru can be, possible (47)
arasoi *n.* quarrel
arasou *vi. I.* to quarrel, to contest
aratamaru *vi. I.* to be revised
aratameru *vt. II.* to revise
arau *vt. I.* to wash
arawasu *vt. I.* to show
are *pron.* that
-areru *auxil. v.* can; passive voice (47, 49)
ari *n.* ant
arigatai *adj.* kind, fortunate
arigatoo thank you (27)
aru *vi. irr.* to be (41)
aru (*adj.*) a certain
aruite-iku go on foot (24)
aruku *vi. vt. I.* to walk (24)
asa *n.* morning
asa *n.* hemp
asa-gohan *n.* breakfast (26)
asai *adj.* shallow
asa-sa *n.* shallowness
-aseru *auxil. v.* to let (causa-

tive) (50)
ashi *n.* foot, leg
ashita *n.* tomorrow (22, 36)
asobi *n.* play, game
asobu *vi. I.* to play (42)
asonda played, past form of
asobu
asonde-i-masu is playing (42)
ataeru *vt. II.* to give
atai *n.* price, value
atai-suru *vi. irr.* to cost, to be
worth
atama *n.* head
atarashii *adj.* new
atarashi-sa *n.* newness
atatakai *adj.* warm
atataka-sa *n.* warmth
atsui *adj.* thick
atsui *adj.* hot
atsumari *n.* gathering, meet-
ing
atsumaru *vi. I.* to gather
atsumeru *vt. II.* to gather
atsu-sa *n.* thickness
atsu-sa *n.* hotness, heat
atta was, were. past form of
aru (40)
au *vi. I.* to meet
awaseru *vt. II.* to put together
ayamari *n.* mistake
ayamaru *vt. I.* to mistake
ayamaru *vi. I.* to apologize
ayamatta (*adj.*) mistaken
azukaru *vt. I.* to take charge
of

azukeru *vt. II.* to deposit, to
entrust

B

bai *suf.* times, fold (ni-bai
twice as much)
baikin *n.* bacteria
baka *n. interj.* fool
bakari *suf.* about, only
baketsu *n.* bucket
bakuhatsu *n.* explosion
bakuhatsu-suru *vi. irr.* to ex-
plode
ban *n.* evening
ban *suf.* number, -th (33)
bangoo *n.* number (33)
ban-suru *vt. irr.* to stand guard
banme *suf.* number, -th (33)
bara *n.* rose
bassuru *vt. irr.* to punish
batsu *n.* punishment
beki *auxil. v.* should, must
benjo *n.* water-closet
benkyoo *n.* study
benkyoo-suru *vt. irr.* to study
benri *n.* convenience
benri-na *n-adj.* convenient
betsu-no *n-adj.* separate
biiru *n.* beer
bin *n.* bottle
binboo-na *n-adj.* poor, desti-
tute
boku *pron. I*
bonyari-shita (*adj.*) vague
boo *n.* stick, pole

booshi *n.* hat, cap
botan *n.* button
budoo *n.* grapes
buji *n.* safety. **buji-ni** *adv.*
 without mishap
bun *n.* sentence
bun *n.* portion
bunka *n.* culture, civilization
bunryoo *n.* quantity
burei-na *n-adj.* discourteous
buta *n.* pig
butai *n.* detachment
butai *n.* theater stage
butsuri-gaku *n.* physics
byoo *n.* second (unit of time)
 (35)
byoo *n.* tack, rivet
byoo-in *n.* hospital
byooki *n.* disease
byoo-nin *n.* sick person

C

cha *n.* tea (16)
chabu-dai *n.* dining table (26)
chawan *n.* rice-bowl (26)
chi *n.* blood
chichi *n.* father
chie *n.* intelligence
chigau (*adj.*) different, wrong
chiisai *adj.* small (5)
chijimeru *vt. II.* to shorten
chijimu *vi. I.* to shrink
chika *n-adj.* underground
chikai *adj.* near (51)
chikara *n.* strength

chika-shitsu *n.* basement
chika-tetsu *n.* subway
chikuonki *n.* phonograph
chirasu *vt. I.* to scatter
chiri *n.* dust
chiri *n.* geography
chiru *vi. I.* to fall, to scatter
chishiki *n.* knowledge
choo *numeral* 1,000,000,000,000
choocho *n.* butterfly
choosetsu *n.* adjustment
choosetsu-suru *vt. irr.* to ad-
 just
chootsugai *n.* hinge
choowa *n.* harmony
choowa-suru *vi. irr.* to har-
 monize
chuu-gakkoo *n.* middle school
 (54)
chuugi *n.* loyalty. **chuugi-na**
n-adj. loyal
chuui *n.* attention, care
chuui-suru *vt. irr.* to be watch-
 ful of
chuumon *n.* order
chuumon-suru *vt. irr.* to order
chuuoo *n.* middle, center

D

dai *n.* subject
dai *pref.* number, -th
dai *n.* base, stool, table
dai *numeral adjunct* "unit,"
 used for cars and machinery
 (31)

- daigaku** *n.* university (54)
daihyoo *n.* representative
daihyoo-suru *vt. irr.* to represent
 sent
daiji-na *n.-adj.* precious
daijoobu-na *n.-adj.* safe, secure
 cure
dairi *n.* deputy, proxy
dairi-wo suru *vi. irr.* to take
 someone's place
daku *vt. I.* to hold, to embrace
dakyoo *n.* compromise
damaru *vi. I.* to grow silent,
 to shut up
damasu *vt. I.* to deceive
dame *n.-adj. interj.* no good
dan *n.* step, tier (39)
dantai *n.* group, party
dare *pron.* who?
dasu *vt. I.* to take out, to put
 out
-de ending for predicate complement (1)
-de in, among, abbreviation of
 no-naka-de (34) [(38)
de *postp.* by means of, in, at
dekiru *vi. II.* to be able (48)
Denka *suf.* Prince, Princess
denki *n.* electricity (16)
denpoo *n.* telegram
densha *n.* electric car, street
 car (21)
denshin *n.* telegraph
dentoo *n.* electric light (16)
denwa *n.* telephone
deru *vi. II.* to go out, to come
 out (24)
-de shita was, were (19)
-de shoo will be, shall be (22)
de-te-iku go out (24)
de-te-kuru come out (24)
do *suf.* time, as three times
do *suf.* degree
dobin *n.* tea kettle (of earthen
 ware) (26)
dochira *pron.* which?, where?
 which one (of the two)? (34)
doko *pron.* where? (9)
doku *n.* poison
domo *suf.* indicating plurality
donaru *vi. I.* to yell
donata *pron.* who? (4)
donburi *n.* bowl
donna *n.-adj.* what kind of? (5)
dono (*adj.*) which? (33)
doobutsu *n.* animal
doobutsu-en *n.* zoological
 garden
doogu *n.* tool, furniture
doojoo *n.* sympathy
dooro *n.* road
doozo *adv.* please, kindly (28)
dore *pron.* which?, which one
 (among many)? (8, 34)
doro *n.* soil, earth
doroboo *n.* thief
Doyoobi *n.* Saturday (36)

E

e *n.* picture (39)

e *n.* handle
-e *postp.* to, toward
eda *n.* branch
eiga *n.* cinema, movie
Ei-go *n.* English language (38)
eikyoo *n.* influence, effect
eikyoo-suru *vi. irr.* to influence
eki *n.* liquid, solution
eki *n.* railway station
en, yen unit of money
enpitsu *n.* pencil (8)
enryo *n.* reserve, modesty
enryo-suru *vi. vt. irr.* to be reserved
entotsu *n.* smokestack
erabu *vt. I.* choose

F

fuda *n.* card, ticket, tag
fude *n.* writing brush
fuhei *n.* complaint
fujin *n.* lady, wife, Mrs.
fukai *adj.* deep
fukasa *n.* depth
fuku *vt. I.* to blow
fuku *vt. I.* to wipe
fukumu *vt. I.* to imply
fukuramu *vi. I.* to swell up
fukuro *n.* bag
fumu *vt. I.* to step on, to trample
fun *n.* minute (unit of time) (35)
fune *n.* ship, boat
fururu *vi. II.* to touch

fururu *vi. II.* to swing, to shake
furo *n.* bath
furu *vi. I.* to rain, to fall
furu *vt. I.* to swing, to shake
furueru *vi. II.* to tremble
furui *adj.* old, antiquated
fusagu *vt. I.* to stop, to clog up
fusegu *vt. I.* to defend
fusuma *n.* (heavy) paper door
futa *n.* cover, lid (4)
futa-kumi two sets (32)
futari two persons (32)
futatsu *numeral* two (28)
futoi *adj.* thick, big
futoru *vi. I.* to grow fat
futotta (*adj.*) fat
futsuka two days, second day of the month (36)
futsuu, futsuu-no *n-adj.* ordinary
fuuzoku *n.* customs, manners
fuyu *n.* winter
fuzoku-suru *vi. irr.* to belong

G

-ga ending for subject (emphatic) (8)
gai *n.* damage
gaikoku *n.* foreign country
gaikoo *n.* diplomacy
gai-suru *vt. irr.* to damage
gaitoo *n.* overcoat
gakkoo *n.* school (14)
gakumon *n.* learning
ganjitsu New Year's Day (36)

- gan-nen** first year (of an era)
garasu *n.* glass [36]
gasu *n.* gas
gatsu *suf.* month
geijutsu *n.* fine arts
geki *n.* drama
gen-in *n.* cause
genkan *n.* entrance hall (39)
genki *n.* spirit, energy
genkin *n.* cash
genzuru *vi. vt. irr.* (inflexion of suru) to decrease
gesui *n.* sewerage
geta *n.* wooden clogs (39)
Getsuyoo *n.* Monday (36)
gezai *n.* laxative
gimu *n.* duty
gin *n.* silver
ginkoo *n.* bank
giri *n.* obligation
go *numeral* five (30)
go *n.* language, word
go- *pref.* honorific
go-chisoo *n.* feast, entertainment
Go-gatsu month of May (36)
gogo *n.* afternoon
go-han *n.* boiled rice, meal (22)
gomen-nasai please forgive me
gozai-masu to be (ari-masu)
gozen *n.* before-noon, morn-
guntai *n.* army [ing
guuzen *n. & n-adj.* accidental (guuzen-no)
gyoo *n.* line of a page
- H**
- ha** *n.* leaf
ha *n.* tooth
ha *n.* edge (of a knife)
habuku *vt. I.* to eliminate
hachi *n.* bee
hachi *numeral* eight (30)
Hachi-gatsu August (36)
hadaka-no *n-adj.* nude
hade-na *n-adj.* gay
hae (**hai**) *n.* fly
hagaki *n.* postcard
haha *n.* mother
hai *n.* lung; ashes
hai (**hae**) *n.* fly
hai yes (2)
hai *suf.* —ful, as cupful (31)
hairu *vi. vt. I.* to enter (39)
haita put on (past form of **haku**) (39)
haitta entered (past form of **hairu**) (39)
haji *n.* shame
haji-wo kaku to be disgraced
hajimaru *vi. I.* to begin (42)
hajime *n.* beginning
hajimeru *vt. II.* to begin
haka *n.* grave
hakama *n.* skirt, hakama
hakari *n.* measure, scale
hakar *vt. I.* to measure, to weigh
hake *n.* brush

- hakken** *n.* discovery
hakken-suru *vt. irr.* to discover
hakkiri *adv.* distinctly, clearly
hakkiri-shita (*adj.*) distinct, clear
hakkiri-suru *vi. irr.* to be or to become distinct
hako *n.* box (4)
haku *vt. I.* to wear on foot (39)
haku *vt. I.* to vomit
haku *vt. I.* to sweep
hakubutsu-kan *n.* museum
han *n.* half, half past (35)
hana *n.* nose
hana *n.* flower
hanareru *vi. II.* to part, to be distant
hanare-ta (*adj.*) separated, distant
hanashi *n.* story, talk (42, 51)
hanasu *vt. I.* to separate
hanbun *n. & n-adj.* half (hanbun-no)
hane *n.* feather, wing
haneru *vi. II.* to jump
hantai *n. n-adj.* opposition, opposite (hantai-no)
hantai-suru *vi. irr.* to oppose
haori *n.* over-garment
hara *n.* stomach, abdomen
harau *vt. I.* to pay, to sweep off
hare *n.* fine weather
hareru *vi. II.* to clear up
hari *n.* needle
haru *n.* spring (season)
hasami *n.* scissors
hashi *n.* bridge
hashi *n.* end, margin
hashi (or o-hash) *n.* chop sticks (26)
hashigo *n.* ladder
hashira *n.* pillar
hashiru *vi. I.* to run
hata *n.* flag
hatake *n.* farm field
hataraki *n.* work
hataraku *vi. I.* to work
hatsuka twenty days, twentieth day of the month (36)
hatsumei *n.* invention
hatsumei-suru *vt. irr.* to invent
hayai *adj.* quick, early
haya-sa *n.* speed, earliness
hebi *n.* snake
Heika *suf., n.* his(her) Majesty
heikin *n.* average, balance
heikin-suru *vt. irr.* to average, to balance
heikoo *n-adj.* parallel (heikoo-no)
heikoo-suru *vi. irr.* to parallel
heitai *n.* soldiers
heiwa *n.* peace. **heiwa-na** *n-adj.* peaceful
henka *n.* change
henka-suru *vi. irr.* to change, to transform
heri *n.* edge, brim

- heta-na** *n.-adj.* unskilful, clumsy
heya *n.* room (7)
hi *n.* sun, sunshine, day (36)
hi *n.* fire
hibachi *n.* fire brazier (15)
hidari *n.* & *n.-adj.* left (12)
hieru *vi. II.* to become cool
higashi *n.* east
hijoo *n.* emergency
hijoo-ni *adv.* very, greatly
hikaku *n.* comparison
hikaku-suru *vt. irr.* to compare
hikari *n.* light [pare
hikaru *vi. I.* to shine
hiki *numeral adjunct* "head,"
 used for living things in
 general (31)
hikidashi *n.* drawer (33)
hikooki *n.* aeroplane
hiku *vt. I.* to pull, to draw
hikui *adj.* low (34)
hima *n.* leisure, time
himitsu *n.* secret. **himitsu-**
no *n.-adj.* secret
himitsu-ni suru to keep se-
himo *n.* string, rope [cret
hiraita (*adj.*) open
hiraki *n.* opening, door
hiraku *vt. vi. I.* to open
hiro *adj.* wide (7)
hiro-sa *n.* width, area
hiru *n.* day-time, noon
hito *n.* person, man, woman
 (10)
- hito-kumi** one set (32)
hitori one person (32)
hitotsu *numeral* one (27)
hitotsu-mo (not) one, (not) any
hitsuyoo *n.* necessity. **hitsu-**
yoo-na *n.-adj.* necessary
hiyasu *vt. I.* to cool
hiza *n.* knee
ho *n.* sail
hodo *postp.* as, like, about
hodoku *vt. I.* to untie
hogaraka-na *n.-adj.* serene
hoka, hoka-no *n.-adj.* other,
 some other (53)
hoken *n.* insurance
homeru *vt. II.* to praise
hon *n.* book (1)
hon *numeral adjunct* "stick,"
 used for long objects as
 pencils (31)
honbako *n.* bookcase (11)
hone *n.* bone
honoo *n.* flame
honyaku *n.* translation
honyaku-suru *vt. irr.* to trans-
 late
hooritsu *n.* law
horu *vt. I.* to dig
hori *n.* moat
hoshi *n.* star
hoshii *adj.* desirous of, (to
 want (52)
hotoke-sama *n.* Buddha
hotondo *adv.* almost
hyaku *numeral* hundred (30)

hyoo *n.* list, table
 hyoojun *n.* standard

I

- i *n.* stomach
 ichi *n.* position
 ichi *numeral* one (30)
 Ichi-gatsu January (36)
 ichigo *n.* strawberry
 ido *n.* well
 ie *n.* house
 ii, yoi *adj.* good
 iie no (3)
 ijutsu *n.* medical art
 ikani *adv.* however, how, how much
 ikari *n.* anger; anchor
 ikaru *vi.* *I.* to be angry
 ikebana *n.* flower arrangement (26)
 iki *n.* breath
 iki-mono *n.* living thing
 ikiru *vi.* *II.* to live, to be alive
 iki-te-iru (*adj.*) alive, living
 iki-wo suru to breathe
 iku, *pref.*, ikutsu *adv.* how many (29)
 iku *vi.* *I.* to go (20)
 ikura *adv.* how much? (35)
 ima *n.* & *adv.* now
 imi *n.* meaning
 imi-suru *vt. irr.* to mean
 imo *n.* potato
 imooto *n.* younger sister
 inaka *n.* countryside
 inoru *vt.* *I.* to pray
 insatsu *n.* printing
 insatsu-suru *vt. irr.* to print
 inu *n.* dog
 ippai one (cup)-ful (32)
 ippiki one "head" (32)
 ippon one "stick"
 ippun one minute (35)
 iro *n.* colour
 ireru *vt.* *II.* to put in
 iri-guchi *n.* entrance
 iru *vi.* *II.* to be (10)
 iru *vi.* *I.* to need (27)
 isha *n.* physician
 ishi *n.* stone (39)
 ishi *n.* will, will power
 ishi-dooro *n.* stone lantern (54)
 ishiki *n.* consciousness
 ishiki-suru *vt. irr.* to be conscious
 isogashii *adj.* busy
 isogu *vt.* *I.* to hurry
 issatsu one volume (32)
 issho-ni *postp.* together
 isu *n.* chair (34)
 ita *n.* board
 itadaki *n.* summit
 itadaku *vt.* *I.* to receive
 itai *adj.* painful, sore
 itameru *vt.* *II.* to injure
 itami *n.* pain
 itamu *vi.* *I.* to ache
 itashi-masu to do (respectful form of suru)
 ito *n.* thread

- itsu** *adv.* when? (19)
itsuka five days, fifth day (36)
itsuka some time, some other time
itsu-kumi five sets (32)
itsumo *adv.* always (15)
itsutsu *numeral* five (29)
itsuwari *n.* deception
itsuwaru *vt. I.* to deceive
itta went (past form of iku) (40)
itte-kuru to take a round trip, to have been to (24)
iu *vi. vt. I.* to say, to call (38)
iya-na *n-adj.* disagreeable
iyashii *adj.* vulgar

J

- jama** *n.* obstruction, interruption
jari *n.* gravel [tion
ji *n.* letter, character, ideograph
ji *n.* time, hour, o'clock (35)
jibiki *n.* dictionary
jibun *n.* self
jidoo (*adj.*) automatic
jidoosha *n.* automobile (52)
jikan *n.* time, hour (35)
jiki-ni *adv.* soon
jiman *n.* pride
jimen *n.* ground
jimusho *n.* office (52)
jippai ten (cup)-fuls (32)
jippiki ten "heads" (32)
jippon ten "sticks" (32)
jippun ten minutes (35)
jishin *n.* earthquake
jishin *pron.* self
jisho *n.* dictionary
jissai *n. n-adj.* fact, real (jissai-no)
jissatsu ten volumes (32)
jissen ten sen (35)
jitensha *n.* bicycle (52)
jiyuu *n.* liberty
jiyuu-na *n-adj.* free
jochuu *n.* maid servant
joodan *n.* joke
jookhin-na *n-adj.* genteel
jooki *n.* steam
joomae *n.* lock
jo-oo *n.* queen
jootai *n.* condition, circumstance
joozu-na *n-adj.* skilful
junban *n.* turn, sequence
junjo *n.* order, sequence
junsa *n.* police man
juu *numeral* ten (30)
juubun-na *n-adj.* enough
Juu-gatsu October (36)
Juu-ichi-gatsu November (36)
juu-ippun eleven "sticks" (32)
juu-ippun eleven minutes (35)
juu-issatsu eleven volumes (33)
Juu-ni-gatsu December (36)

K

- ka** *n.* mosquito
ka *adv.* ? (2)

- kaban** *n.* bag, suitcase
kabe *n.* wall (16, 54)
kachi *n.* victory
kado *n.* corner
kaeri *n.* return, way back
kaeru *vi. I.* to return
kaeru *vt. II.* to change, to substitute
kaetta returned (past form of **kaeru**) (40)
kagaku *n.* science
kagaku *n.* chemistry
kagami *n.* mirror
kagayaku *vi. I.* to shine
kage *n.* shadow, shade
kagi *n.* key
kagiri *n.* limit
kagiru *vt. I.* to limit
kago *n.* basket
kagu *vt. I.* to smell
kai *suf.* floor, storey (52)
kai *n.* shell-fish
kaigan *n.* seashore
kaigun *n.* navy
kaikē *n.* accounts, accountant
kaiko *n.* silkworm
kaisha *n.* company, corporation
kaita wrote (past form of **kaku**) (40)
kaji *n.* fire (house on fire)
kakaru *vi. I.* to hang, to cost
kakemono *n.* hanging scroll
kakeru *vi. vt. II.* to run (42)
kakeru *vt. II.* to hang, to spend
kakeru *vi. II.* to sit on
kako *n.* past
kakoi *n.* enclosure, fence
kakomu *vt. I.* to surround
kaku *n.* angle
kaku *vt. I.* to write, to scratch (23)
kakureru *vi. II.* to hide
kakusu *vt. I.* to hide
kama *n.* kettle, boiler
kami *n.* paper (31)
kaminari *n.* thunder
kami-sama *n.* god
kamoku *n.* subject, branch of study
kamu *vt. I.* to bite, to chew
kana *n.* syllabary, Japanese syllabic letters
kanarazu *adv.* surely, without fail
kanashii *adj.* sad
kanashimi *n.* sorrow
kanashimu *vt. I.* to grieve
kane *n.* metal, money
kangae *n.* thought, idea
kangaeru *vt. II.* to think
kangei *n.* welcome
kanji *n.* feeling, sense
kanjiru *vt. II.* to feel
kanjoo *n.* counting, accounts
kanjoo-suru *vt. irr.* to count
kankei *n.* relation
kantan-na *n-adj.* simple
kanzen *n.* perfection
kanzen-na *n-adj.* perfect

- kao** *n.* face, countenance
kara *postp.* from, since (19)
kara *con.* therefore, because (47)
kara *n., n-adj.* empty (kara-na)
karada *n.* body
karai *adj.* salty, hot (peppery)
kare *pron.* he
kari-no *n-adj.* temporary, substitute
kariru *vt. II.* to borrow
karui *adj.* light in weight
kasa *n.* umbrella
kasamaru *vi. I.* to be piled up, to be repeated
kasamaru *vt. II.* to pile up, to repeat
kashi *n.* cake, confectionery
kashi *n.* loan, lending
kashira *n.* head, headman
kasu *vt. I.* to lend
kasuka-na *n-adj.* faint, dim
kata *n.* shoulder
kata *n.* type, style, mould
katachi *n.* shape
katai *adj.* hard, firm
katana *n.* sword
kata-sa *n.* degree of hardness
katazakeru *vt. II.* to put in order
katei *n.* home, family
katsu *vi. I.* to win
katta won (past form of **katsu**)
katta bought (past form of **kau**)
katte *n. & n-adj.* one's own way, wilful
kau *vt. I.* to buy (21)
kawa *n.* skin
kawa *n.* river
kawaita (*adj.*) dry
kawakasu *vt. I.* to dry
kawaku *vi. I.* to dry
kawari *n. & n-adj.* substitute
kawaru *vi. I.* to change, to take the place of
Kayoobi *n.* Tuesday (36)
kayui *adj.* itchy
kazari *n.* decoration
kazaru *vt. I.* to decorate
kaze *n.* wind
kazoeru *vt. II.* to count (52)
kazu *n.* number
ke *n.* hair
kechi-na *n-adj.* stingy
kega *n.* injury, wound
keikaku *n.* plan
keikaku-suru *vt. irr.* to plan
keiken *n.* experience
keiken-suru *vt. irr.* to experience
keisatsu *n.* police
keizai *n.* economy, economics
kekka *n.* result
kekkon *n.* marriage
kekkon-suru *vi. irr.* to marry
kemu, **kemuri** *n.* smoke
ken *n.* prefecture
ken-i *n.* authority
kenkoo *n.* health

- kenri** *n.* right, claim
keredomo *con.* but (14)
keru *vt. I.* to kick
ki *n.* tree, wood (10, 39)
kibishii *adj.* severe, strict
kichigai *n.* insane person
kiiro *n.* yellow
kiroi *adj.* yellow
kikai *n.* chance
kikai *n.* machine
kiken *n.* danger. **kiken-na**
n-adj. dangerous
kikoeru *vi. II.* to be audible,
to sound
kiku *vt. I.* to hear, to listen to
kimari *n.* regulation
kimaru *vi. I.* to be decided
ki-masu come (19)
kimeru *vt. II.* to decide
kimono *n.* clothing (4)
kin *n.* gold
kinen *n.* memorial (54)
kinoo *n.* yesterday (19, 36)
kinu *n.* silk
Kin-yoobi *n.* Friday (36)
kinzoku *n. & n-adj.* metal
kioku *n.* memory
kioku-suru *vt. irr.* to remem-
ber
kippu *n.* ticket (27)
kirai-na *n-adj.* distasteful
kirau *vt. I.* to dislike
kire *n.* cloth
kirei-na *n-adj.* pretty, clean (6)
kireru (*adj.*) sharp
kireru *vi. II.* to be cut, to be
severed
kiri *n.* fog, mist
kiroku *n.* record, document
kiroku-suru *vt. irr.* to record
kiru *vt. I.* to cut
kiru *vt. II.* to wear, to put on
kisen *n.* steamer
kisha *n.* railway train (50)
kisoku *n.* rule, regulation
kita *n.* north
ki-ta came (past form of
kuru) (41)
kitanai *adj.* ugly, dirty (6)
kitte *n.* postage stamp
ko *n.* child (42, 51)
ko *suf.* piece
kochira *pron.* here
kodomo *n.* child (33)
koe *n.* voice
koeru *vt. II.* to go over, to
surmount
koi come (imperative form of
kuru)
koi *n.* carp fish (46)
koi-nobori *n.* carp streamer
kojiki *n.* beggar [(46)
koke *n.* moss
koko *pron.* here (9)
kokonoka nine days, ninth
day of the month (36)
kokonotsu *numeral* nine (29)
kokoro *n.* mind, heart
kokoromiru *vt. II.* to try
kokorozashi *n.* intention

- kokorozasu** *vt. I.* to intend
kokusai *n.-adj.* international
komaru *vi. I.* to be troubled (49)
kome *n.* rice, rice grain
kona *n.* powder, flour
ko-nai do not come (43)
kon-getsu this month (36)
kon-nen this year (36)
kon-nichi today (36)
kono (*adj.*) this (8)
konomi *n.* liking, taste
konomu *vt. I.* to like, to have
 a taste for
kon-shuu this week (36)
kooen *n.* park
koogeki *n.* attack
koogeki-suru *vt. irr.* to attack
Koogoo *n.* Empress
koogyoo *n.* industry
koohii *n.* coffee
koojoo *n.* factory
kookoku *n.* advertisement
kookoku-suru *vt. irr.* to advertise
 tise
koori *n.* ice
ko-rareru can come
kore *pron.* this (1)
koro *n. & suf.* time, about the
 time
ko-saseru let someone come
 (50)
koshi *n.* hip, waist
kosuru *vt. I.* to rub
kotae *n.* answer
kotaeru *vi. II.* to answer
koto *n.* matter, thing, fact
 (37, 48)
kotoba *n.* word, speech, language
kotoshi this year (36)
kowai *adj.* fearful
kowasu *vt. I.* to break up (25,
 49)
koyomi *n.* calendar
koyoo will come (future form
 of *kuru*) (41)
ku *numeral* nine (30)
kubi *n.* neck, head
kuchi *n.* mouth, entrance
kuchibiru *n.* lip
kuchi-e *n.* frontispiece (42)
kudakeru *vi. II.* to shatter into
 pieces
kudaku *vt. I.* to shatter into
 pieces
kudamono *n.* fruit
kudasai (imperative) please
 give the favour of (27)
kudasaru *vt. I.* to give, (to
 send down)
kudasatta gave (past form of
 kudasaru) (40)
Ku-gatsu September (36)
kugi *n.* nail, spike
kuki *n.* stalk, stem
kumi *n.* class, group
kumi *suf.* set, pair (32)
kumo *n.* cloud
kumo *n.* spider
kun *suf.* Mr.

kuni *n.* country, nation
kurabu *n.* club, association
kurai *adj.* dark
kuro *n.* black. **kuroi** *adj.* black
kuru *vi. irr.* come (19, 41)
kuruma *n.* car
kuruma *n.* wheel
kurushimi *n.* suffering, hardship
kurushimu *vi. & vt. I.* to suffer
kurushii *adj.* painful, hard
kusa *n.* grass
kusari *n.* chain
kusaru *vi. I.* to rot
kushi *n.* comb
kusuri *n.* medicine, chemical
kutsu *n.* shoes, boots (39)
kuuki *n.* air
kuwa *n.* hoe
kuyamu *vt. I.* to regret
kyaku guest (o-kyaku) (16)
kyoku *n.* office, bureau
kyo-nen last year (36)
kyoo *n.* today (36)
kyooiku *n.* education
kyooiku-suru *vt. irr.* to educate
kyoomi *n.* interest, liking
kyuu *n.* grade, class
kyuu *numeral* nine

M

machi *n.* town, street (52)
mada *adv.* yet, not yet (42)
made *postp.* till, as far as (20, 35)

mado *n.* window (15)
mae *n.* front, before, ago (12, 35)
magaru *vi. I.* to bend, to turn
magatta (*adj.*) crooked
mageru *vt. II.* to bend
mai *suf.* sheet of (31)
mai *pref.* every, each
majime-na *n-adj.* serious, earnest
makoto *n.* sincerity. **makoto-no** *n-adj.* sincere
maku *vt. I.* to roll, to wind
mama *postp.* as, same
mame *n.* beans, peas
mamoru *vt. I.* to defend, to keep
man *numeral* ten thousand (30)
manzoku *n.* satisfaction. **manzoku-na** *n-adj.* satisfactory
manzoku-suru *vi. irr.* to be satisfied
maru *n.* circle
marui *adj.* round
masatsu *n.* friction
-masen do not (negative form of masu) (3)
-masen-deshita did not (past negative form of masu) (19)
-masen-deshoo will not, shall not (future negative form of masu) (22)
-mashita suffix for past tense (past form of masu) (19)

- mashoo** will, shall, let us (future form of masu) (21, 22)
-masu *auxil. v.* "do" (3, 17)
mata *adv.* again, also
matsu *n.* pine tree (46)
matsu *vt. I.* to wait
matsuri *n.* festival
mattaku *adv.* quite, entirely
mawari *n.* circumference, neighbourhood
mazaru *vi. I.* to become mixed
mazeru *vt. II.* to mix
me *n.* eye
me *n.* sprout, bud
medetai *adj.* happy, worthy of congratulation
megane *n.* spectacles
meetoru *n.* meter
meetoru metre (unit of length)
mesu *n. & n-adj.* female
mi *n.* fruit, nut
michi *n.* road, way, method
michiru *vi. II.* to become full
midori *n.* green (midori-no)
mieru *vi. II.* to be visible
migaku *vt. I.* to polish
migaita (*adj.*) polished
migi *n. & n-adj.* right (12)
mijikai *adj.* short
miki *n.* tree-trunk
mikka three days, third day of the month (36)
mikumi three sets (32)
mimi *n.* ear
minami *n.* south
minato *n.* harbour, port
minikui *adj.* ugly
miru *vt. II.* to see (18)
misoka last day of the month (36)
mitasu *vt. I.* to fill
mi-te-miru look and see, examine (24)
mittsu *numeral* three (28)
mizu *n.* water (21)
mo *postp.* also
mochi-masu have, hold (18)
mokuteki *n.* object, purpose
Mokuyoo *n.* Thursday (36)
mon *n.* gate
mono *n.* thing (13)
mono *n.* person
moo *adv.* already, more (43)
moo hitotsu one more, another (49)
morau *vt. I.* to receive, to be given
moshi - naraba if
moshimo - kereba if (53)
moshimo - naraba if
moshi-moshi hello (a call)
moto *n.* basis, origin, root
motsu *vt. I.* to hold, to have (18)
motte *adv.* with, by
motte-iku take, take away (24)
motte-kuru bring (24)
motto *adv.* more (34)
muchu *n.* whip
mugi *n.* wheat

- muika** six days, sixth day of the month (36)
muku *vt. I.* to peel, to skin
mukui *n.* reward
mu-kumi six sets (32)
mune *n.* chest, breast, mind
mura *n.* village
murasaki *n.* purple (murasaki-no)
mure *n.* crowd, flock
muri-na *n.-adj.* unreasonable
musha-ningyoo *n.* warrior dolls (46)
mushi *n.* insect, worm
musubi *n.* tie, knot, end
musubu *vt. I.* to tie, to conclude
muttsu *numeral* six (29)
muzukashii *adj.* difficult
muzukashi-sa *n.* difficulty (the degree of)
myoo-nen next year (36)
myoo-nichi *n.* tomorrow (36)
- N
- na** "of" (ending for noun-adjective) (6)
na *n.* name (54)
nabe *n.* pan, pot
nado *suf.* and the like, etc.
nagai *adj.* long (54)
nagame *n.* view, scenery
nagameru *vt. II.* to view, to look at
nagara *suf., adv.* while, as though
nagare *n.* stream
nagareru *vi. II.* to flow
naga-sa *n.* length
nagasu *vt. I.* to let flow, to shed
nagusami *n.* recreation
nagusameru *vt. II.* to console
nai *vi. irr.* is not, are not, am not (negative form of *aru*) (45)
nai *adj. auxil, v.* not, un-, in- (13)
naka *n.* inside, between, middle (11, 42)
nakaroo will not be, shall not be (future negative of *aru*) (45)
nakatta was not, were not (past negative of *aru*) (45)
naka-yoshi *n.* good friends, chums (42)
-nakereba naranai must (53)
naku *vi. I.* to cry, to weep
namae *n.* name (54)
nameraka-na *n.-adj.* smooth
nami *n.* wave
nan *adj., pron.* what? (2)
nanatsu *numeral* seven (29)
nan-bai how many (cup)-fuls? (32)
nan-biki how many "heads"? (32)
nan-bon how many "sticks"? (32)
nan-gatsu what month? (36)

- nani** *pron.* what? (2)
nani-mo (not) anything (27)
nani-yoobi what day of the week?
nan-ji what time? (35)
nan-ka-getsu how many months? (36)
nan-nichi what day? how many days? (36)
nan-shuukan how many weeks?
nanuka seven days, seventh day of the month (36)
nao *adv.* more, also
naoru *vi.* *I.* to be corrected, to recover
naosu *vt.* *I.* to correct, to cure
nara-nai will not do (must)
nareru *vi.* *II.* to become accustomed, to grow skilful
nareru *vi.* *II.* to become tame
nareta (*adj.*) accustomed, familiar
nareta (*adj.*) tame
naru *vi.* *I.* to become, to grow (46, 54)
natsu *n.* summer
ne *n.* root
negai *n.* wish, request
negau *vt.* *I.* to wish, to request
negi *n.* onion
neji *n.* screw, bolt, nut
nejireru *vi.* *II.* to become twisted
nejireta (*adj.*) twisted
nejiru *vt.* *I.* to twist
neko *n.* cat
nemuru *vi.* *I.* to sleep
nen *n., suf.* year
neru *vi.* *II.* to lie down, to sleep
netsu *n.* heat, fever
nezumi *n.* rat, mouse
ni *numeral* two (30)
-ni *postp.* to, in, on, at (9, 27)
nibui *adj.* dull, slow
nichi *n., suf.* day (36)
Nichiyoo *n.* Sunday (36)
nigai *adj.* bitter
Ni-gatsu February (32)
nigiru *vt.* *I.* to grip, to hold
nigori *n.* muddiness, turbidity
nigoru *vi.* *I.* to become muddy
nigosu *vt.* *I.* to make muddy
nigotta (*adj.*) muddy, impure
ni-jissatsu twenty volumes (32)
niku *n.* meat, flesh (23)
nikui *adj.* detestable
nikumu *vt.* *I.* to hate
nikurashii *adj.* detestable
nin *suf.* man, number of men (32)
ningyoo *n.* doll
nioi *n.* smell
niou *vi.* *I.* to smell
Nippon *n.* Japan (15)
niru *vi.* *II.* to resemble
niru *vt.* *II.* to boil
nise-no *n-adj.* counterfeit
nishi *n.* west

- niwa** *n.* yard, garden (10)
niwatori *n.* chicken
-no *postp.* of (4)
nobasu *vt. I.* to stretch, to let grow
nobiru *vi. II.* to grow, to stretch
nochi *n., n-adj.* later, future
nodo *n.* throat
nohara *n.* field
-no mae-ni in front of (12)
nomi *n.* flea
nomu *vt. I.* to drink
-no naka-de in, among (34)
-no naka-ni in, inside (11)
noo *n.* brain
noogyoo *n.* agriculture
nori *n.* paste
noru *vi. I.* to ride (21)
-no shita-ni under (11)
notta rode (past form of **noru**)
-no ue-ni on, upon (11)
-no ushiro-ni behind (12)
nozomi *n.* hope
nozomu *vt. I.* to hope
-nu *auxil. v.* not
nuno *n.* cloth
nusumu *vt. I.* to steal
- O**
- o** *n.* tail
o- *honorific pref.* honorable
oba *n.* aunt
obi *n.* belt, sash
oboer *n.* memory
oboeru *vt. II.* to remember, to memorize (40)
o-cha *n.* tea (16)
odori *n.* dance
odoroku *vi. I.* to be surprised
odoru *vt. I.* to dance
o-hashi *n.* chop-sticks
o-hitsu *n.* rice tub (26)
oite *postp.* at, in, on
oji *n.* uncle
o-kashi *n.* cake, sweets (44)
oki-mono *n.* ornament to be set on tokonoma and shelves (16)
okiru *vi. II.* to get up
okosu *vt. I.* to raise up, to arouse
oku *vt. I.* to place, to leave (46)
oku *n.* inner part, back room
oku *numeral* hundred million
okuru *vt. I.* to send [(30)
oku-san, oku-sama *n.* wife, mistress of a house (39)
o-kyaku *n.* guest (16, 39)
o-matsuri *n.* festival (46)
omoi *n-adj.* heavy
omo-sa *n.* weight
omoshiroi *adj.* interesting (51)
omote *n. n-adj.* front, front face, out of doors
omou *vt. I.* to think (42)
onaji *n-adj.* same
ongaku *n.* music
onna, onna-no hito *n.* woman (42)

onna-no ko *n.* girl (42)
oo, oo-sama *n.* king
ooi *adj.* many, much
ookii *adj.* big (5)
ookiku *naru* to grow
ooki-sa *n.* size
ooyake-no *n-adj.* public
oreru *vi. II.* to become bent,
 folded, or broken
ori-mono *n.* cloth, woven thing
oru *vt. I.* to bend, to fold, to
 break
oru *vt. I.* to weave
oru *vi. I.* to be
oshie *n.* teaching, precept (38)
oshieru *vt. II.* to teach (38)
osoi *adj.* slow, late
osore *n.* fear
osoreru *vt. II.* to fear
osu *vt. I.* to push
osu *n., n-adj.* male
oto *n.* sound, noise
otoko, otoko-no hito *n.* man
 (1)
otoko-no ko *n.* boy (42)
otooto *n.* younger brother
otoru *vi. I.* to be inferior
o-wan *n.* wooden bowl (26)
owari *n.* end
owaru *vi., vt. I.* to end, to finish
oyogu *vt. I.* to swim

P

pan *n.* bread
peiji *n., suf.* page

penki *n.* paint
pokketto *n.* pocket
ponpu *n.* pump

R

-ra *suf.* used after nouns and
 pronouns to indicate plu-
 rality
rai-getsu next month (36)
rai-nen next year (36)
rai-shuu next week (36)
rajio *n.* radio
raku *n.* ease, comfort
raku-suru *vi. irr.* to take it
 easy, to be comfortable
-rareru *auxil. v.* to be able, &
 passive voice (47, 49)
rashii *postp., adj.* apparently,
 as if
rei *n.* zero (30)
rei *n.* example
rei *n.* salutation, thanks
reigi *n.* etiquette
rei-suru *vi. irr.* to bow, to greet
rekishi *n.* history
renga *n.* brick
renmei *n.* league
renraku *n.* communication,
 connection
renraku-suru *vi. irr.* to make
 contact
retsu *n.* rank, column
rieki *n.* profit
rikoo-na *n-adj.* intelligent,
 wise (13)

riku *n.* land
rikugun *n.* army
ringo *n.* apple
rippa-na *n.-adj.* fine, magnificent (7)
rittoru litre (unit of measure)
riyuu *n.* reason, ground
roku *numeral* six (30)
Roku-gatsu June (36)
ron *n.* argument
roppai six (cup)-fuls (32)
roppiki six "heads" (32)
roppon six "sticks" (32)
roppun six minutes (35)
rui *n.* kind, sort
ryoori *n.* cooking
ryoori-suru *vt. irr.* to cook
ryuukoo *n.* fashion, fad
ryuukoo-suru *vi. irr.* to be in fashion

S

sabi *n.* rust, corrosion
sabiru *vi. II.* to rust, to corrode
sadamaru *vi. I.* to be fixed, to become settled
sadame *n.* regulation, rule
sadameru *vt. II.* to fix, to settle
sae *postp.* even, only
-sai *suf.* year old as *ni-sai* = two years old (36)
saiban *n.* trial, judgment
saiban-suru *vt. irr.* to pass judgment
saiwai *n.* happiness. **saiwai-**

na *n.-adj.* happy, lucky
saka *n.* hill, slope
sakai *n.* border, boundary
sakana *n.* fish (46)
sakasama *n., n.-adj.* upside down, inverted
sake *n.* wine, liquor
sakeru *vt. II.* to avoid
sakeru *vi. II.* to tear
saku *vt. I.* to tear
sakujitsu *n.* yesterday (36)
saku-nen last year (36)
sakura *n.* cherry blossom, tree
sama *suf.* Mr., Mrs., Miss
samatage *n.* obstruction
samatageru *vt. II.* to obstruct
samui *adj.* cold
samu-sa *n.* degree of coldness
san *numeral* three
san *suf.* Mr., Mrs., Miss (3)
san *n.* acid
san-bai three (cup)-fuls (32)
san-biki three "heads" (32)
san-bon three "sticks" (32)
San-gatsu March (36)
san-pun three minutes (35)
sansei *n.* approval
sansei-suru *vt. vi. irr.* to approve
sara *n.* tray, dish (26)
saseru *vt. II.* to let someone do (50)
-saseru *auxil. v.* to let, to make (causative) (50)
sasou *vt. I.* to invite, to entice

- satoo** *n.* sugar
satsu *n.* paper-money, bank-note
-satsu *suf.* for counting books, volume (31)
sawagu *vt. I.* to be excited, to make noise
sayonara goodbye (39)
seifu *n.* government
seikaku *n.* character, nature
seikatsu *n.* life, living
seikatsu-suru *vi. irr.* to live, to make living
seikoo *n.* success
seikoo-suru *vi. irr.* to succeed
seimitsu *n. n-adj.* precision, precise (seimitsu-na)
seiri *n.* arrangement, order
seiri-suru *vt. irr.* to arrange, to put in order
seishin *n.* spirit
seishitsu *n.* character, nature
seiyoo *n. n-adj.* Europe, European
seiyoo-jin *n.* European
sekai *n.* world
seki *n.* seat
seki *n.* cough
sekinin *n.* responsibility
seki-suru *vi. irr.* to cough
sekitan *n.* coal
sekiyu *n.* kerosene, petroleum
semai *adj.* narrow, small in area (7)
semento *n.* cement
sen *n.* line
sen unit of money, 100 sen make one yen (35)
sen *numeral* thousand (30)
sen-getsu last month (36)
senkyo *n.* election
sensei *n.* teacher (49)
sensoo *n.* war
sen-shuu last week (36)
sentaku *n.* wash, laundry
sentaku-suru *vt. irr.* to launder, to wash
se-rareru can do (47)
setomono *n.* chinaware
setsumei *n.* explanation
setsumei-suru *vt. irr.* to explain
shabon *n.* soap
shakai *n.* society
shakai-gaku *n.* sociology
shakai-teki (*adj.*) social
shashin *n.* photograph (46)
shatsu *n.* under-shirt (6)
shi *n.* city
shi *numeral* four (30)
shichi *numeral* seven (36)
Shichi-gatsu July (36)
shidoo *n.* leading, direction
shidoo-sha *n.* leader
shidoo-suru *vt. irr.* to lead, to direct
Shi-gatsu April (36)
shigeki *n.* stimulus, excitement
shigeki-suru *vt. irr.* to excite,

- to stimulate
shigoto *n.* work
shigoto-suru *vi. irr.* to work
shihai *n.* management
shihai-nin *n.* manager
shihai-suru *vt. irr.* to manage
shikake *n.* device, mechanism
shikakeru *vt. II.* to make a device
shikaru *vt. I.* to scold, to reprimand
shikashi *con.* but
shi-masu do (17, 40)
shimatta finished, put away (past form of **shimau**) (40)
shimau *vt. I.* to finish, to put away
shimeru *vt. II.* to close (17)
shimeru *vt. I.* to become moist
shimetta (*adj.*) wet, damp
shina *n.* thing, article
shi-nai do not do (43)
shinbun *n.* newspaper (17)
shinchuu *n.* brass
shinjiru *vt. II.* to believe
shinkei *n.* nerve, nervous system
shinpai *n.* anxiety
shinpai-suru *vt. irr.* to worry
shinsetsu *n.* kindness. **shinsetsu-na** *n-adj.* kind (13)
shinu *vi. I.* die (54)
shinzoo *n.* heart
shio *n.* salt
shippai *n.* failure
shippai-suru *vi. irr.* to fail
shi-rareru be known, become known
shi-rareru can do, be done (47, 49)
shirase *n.* report
shiraseru *vt. II.* to report, to notify
shireru *vi. II.* to become known
shiro *n.* white. **shiroi** *adj.* white
shiru *n.* juice, soup
shiru *vt. I.* to know
shirushi *n.* mark, sign
shita *n.* tongue
shita *n.* lower part, under side
shi-ta did (past form of **suru**)
shitagaeru *vt. II.* to subjugate, to be attended by
shitagau *vi. I.* to obey
shitashii *adj.* intimate
shi-te-mirudo and see, try (24)
shitsu *n.* room
shitsu *n.* nature, quality
shitsukko *adj.* obstinate
shiyoo will do (future form of **suru**) (41)
shizen *n.* nature. **shizen-no** *n-adj.* natural
shizuka-na *n-adj.* quiet
shizuke-sa *n.* quietness, stillness
shokubutsu *n.* plant, plant life
shokumin *n.* colonization

- shokumin-suru** *vi. irr.* to colo-
shoo *n.* chapter [nize
shoo will be, shall be (contrac-
tion of **ari-mashoo**) (22)
shooji *n.* paper door with sin-
gle layer of light paper (15)
shookai *n.* introduction
shookai-suru *vt. irr.* to intro-
duce
shooko *n.* proof, evidence
shookoo *n.* military officer
shoosetsu *n.* novel
shujin *n.* master, mistress,
host
shujutsu *n.* operation (medi-
cal)
shuu, shuukan *n.* week (36)
shuukan *n.* custom
shuukyoo *n.* religion
soba *n.* side (12)
sode *n.* sleeve
soeru *vt. II.* to add, to attach
soko *pron.* there (9)
sonkei *n.* respect
sonkei-suru *vt. irr.* to respect
sono (*adj.*) that (8)
soo *adv.* so (3)
soodan *n.* consultation
soozoo *n.* imagination
sora *n.* sky
sore *pron.* that (1)
sosen *n.* ancestor
soshiki *n.* system
soshite *con.* and (14)
soto *n.* outside, out doors
su is, are, am (contraction of
ari-masu) (1)
suberu *vt. I.* to slip, to slide
subete *n., n-adj.* all
sugi *suf.* past
sugiru *vt. II.* to pass
sugu *adv.* at once (47)
sugureru *vi. II.* to excel
sugureta (*adj.*) excellent
suidoo *n.* water-works
suidoo-sen *n.* hydrant, water-
tap
Suiyoo *n.* Wednesday (36)
suji *n.* line, sinew
suki *n-adj.* fond of, like (52)
sukoshi *n-adj.* a little, some
(44)
sukoshi-mo not any (44)
sumai *n.* dwelling
sumau *vi. I.* to dwell
sumi *n.* charcoal
sumi *n.* Indian ink
sumoo *n.* wrestling
sumoo-wo toru to wrestle
sumu *vi. I.* to live, to dwell (54)
sumu *vi. I.* to finish
sun *n.* sand
sunda lived, resided (past form
of **sumu**) (54)
sunda finished (past form of
sumu)
suru *vt. irr.* to do (17, 41)
surudo *adj.* sharp
surudo-sa *n.* sharpness
susumeru *vt. II.* to advance, to

recommend, to encourage
suteru *vt. II.* to throw away
suu *n.* number
suu *vt. I.* to suck
suwaru *vi. I.* to sit, to sit on
 the floor (18)
suwatta sat (past form of
suwaru) (18)
suzushii *adj.* cool
suzushi-sa *n.* coolness

T

ta *n.* paddy field
-ta verb ending for past tense
ta *n.* other, others [(40)
taba *n.* bunch
tabako *n.* tobacco (16)
tabako-bon *n.* tobacco tray
taberu *vt. II.* to eat [(16)
tabi *n.* travel
tachi *n.* nature, quality
tachi-masu stand (**tatsu**) (18)
tada *adv.* only
tada-no *n-adj.* common, free
 of charge
tadashi *adj.* right, honest
tagai-no, o-tagai-no *n-adj.*
 mutual
tai *adj.* desirous of (52)
taido *n.* attitude
taihen *adv.* very, unusually
 (14)
taira-na *n-adj.* flat, smooth (6)
taisetsu-na *n-adj.* important,
 precious (6)

takai *adj.* high, tall, expensive
 (13, 34)
taka-sa *n.* height
take *n.* bamboo
taku *n.* house, home
takusan-no *n-adj.* many,
 much (29)
takuwae *n.* savings, store
takuwaeru *vt. II.* to save, to
 store
tama *n.* ball, precious stone
tamago *n.* egg
tame *n.* benefit, sake. **tame-ni**
adv. for the sake of, in order
 that (54)
tana *n.* shelf (9)
tane *n.* seed
tani *n.* valley
tan-i *n.* unit
tanjun-na *n-adj.* simple
tanomi *n.* request
tanomu *vt. I.* to request
tanoshii *adj.* pleasant
tanoshimi *n.* pleasure, recrea-
 tion
tanoshimu *vt. I.* to enjoy
tansu *n.* chest of drawers
taoreru *vi. II.* to topple over
taosu *vt. I.* to overthrow
tarai *n.* basin, tub
tarasu *vt. I.* to let drip, to spill
tareru *vi. II.* to drip
tariru *vi. II.* to be enough
tashika-na *n-adj.* certain, sure
tasuke *n.* help

- tasukeru** *vt. II.* to help
tatakai *n.* battle, war
tatakau *vi. I.* to fight
tatami *n.* reed mat, matted floor (15)
tate-no *n.-adj.* length-wise, vertical
tateru *vt. II.* to set up
tatsu *vi. I.* to stand (18)
tatta stood (past form of **tatsu**)
te *n.* hand
-te *postp.* and
tegami *n.* letter (23, 38)
Teikoku *n., n.-adj.* Empire, Imperial (54)
Teikoku Daigaku Imperial University (54)
teishaba *n.* railway station
teki *n.* enemy
-teki *suf.* -ic, -ous (added to a noun to form adjective)
tekitoo-na *n.-adj.* appropriate
ten *n.* point, mark
tenjoo *n.* ceiling (16)
tenki *n.* weather
Tennoo *n.* Japanese Emperor
teppoo *n.* gun
tetsu *n.* iron
-tewa nara-nai must not (53)
to *n.* door (28)
to *postp.* and (4)
to *con.* "that" (38)
tobu *vi. vt. I.* to fly
todana *n.* closet, cupboard (11)
todokeru *vt. II.* to report, to deliver
todoku *vi. I.* to reach
toi *n.* question
tojiru *vt. II.* to close
tojiru *vt. II.* to bind (as a book)
tokei *n.* clock, watch
tokeru *vi. II.* to melt, to loosen, to become untied
toki *n.* time (39)
toko *n.* bed
tokonoma *n.* alcove (16)
tokoro *n.* place (39)
toku *n.* virtue
toku *n.* profit
toku *vt. I.* to melt, to solve, to untie
tokubetsu-no *n.-adj.* special
to-kumi *ten* sets, ten pairs (32)
tomaru *vi. I.* to stop
tomeru *vt. II.* to stop
tomo-dachi *n.* friend
tomu *vi. I.* to be rich
tonari-no *n.-adj.* neighbouring
tonda (*adj.*) rich [(46)]
too *n.* tower
too *numeral* ten (29)
tooi *adj.* far (51)
tooku *ten* days, tenth day (36)
toori *n.* street
tooru *vt. I.* to pass, to go along
too-sa *n.* distance
toosu *vt. I.* to let pass, to push through
tori *n.* bird, chicken

- toru** *vt. I.* to take, to take off to catch (23, 39)
toshi *n.* year, age (36)
toshokan *n.* library
totsuzen *n., n.-adj.* sudden
totta took, took off, (past form of **toru**) (39)
tou *vt. I.* to inquire
tsubomi *n.* bud, budding flower
tsubu *n.* grain, particle
tsuchi *n.* soil, earth
tsue *n.* cane, stick
tsugi *n.* next. **tsugi-no** *n.-adj.* next
tsugoo *n.* convenience, circumstance
tsugoo-suru *vt. irr.* to arrange, to accommodate
tsuitachi first day of the month (36)
tsuitate *n.* standing screen (39)
tsuite *con.* of, concerning
tsukaeru *vi. II.* to serve, to wait upon
tsukaeru *vt. II.* to be obstructed, to be clogged
tsukai *n.* messenger
tsukare *n.* fatigue
tsukareru *vi. II.* to be tired
tsukareta (*adj.*) tired
tsukatta used, employed (past form of **tsukau**) (40)
tsukau *vt. I.* to use, to employ (37)
tsukeru *vt. II.* to attach
- tsuki** *n.* moon, month (36)
tsuku *vi. I.* to stick
tsuku *vi. I.* to arrive
tsuku *vt. I.* to push, to stab
tsukue *n.* desk, table (15)
tsukuru *vt. I.* to make, to create (25, 49)
tsuma *n.* wife
tsume *n.* finger nail, claw
tsumi *n.* sin, crime
tsunagu *vt. I.* to connect, to
tsuno *n.* horn [tie
tsutome *n.* work
tsutomeru *vi. vt. II.* to serve as, to work at
tsutsumi *n.* bundle, wrapping
tsutsumu *vt. I.* to wrap
tsuushin *n.* correspondence, report
tsuushin-suru *vt. irr.* to report, to correspond
tsuyoi *adj.* strong (46)
tsuyo-sa *n.* strength
tsuyu *n.* dew, juice

U

- uchi** *n.* inside
uchi *n.* house (14)
ue *n.* top, topside (11)
ukeru *vt. II.* to receive
uma *n.* horse
umareru *vi. II.* to be born
umaru *vi. I.* to become buried
umeru *vt. II.* to bury
umi *n.* sea

undoo *n.* exercise, motion
undoo-suru *vi. irr.* to exercise,
 to move
ura *n.* back side, reverse side
uru *vt. I.* to sell
ushi *n.* cow, ox
ushiro *n.* back, backside (12)
uso *n.* lie
usui *adj.* thin in thickness,
 light in colour
uta *n.* song, poem
utagai *n.* doubt, suspicion
utagau *vt. I.* to doubt
utau *vt. I.* to sing
utsu *vt. I.* to strike, to shoot
utsukushii *adj.* beautiful
utsukushi-sa *n.* beauty
uzumaruru *vi. I.* to become
 buried
uzumeru *vt. II.* to bury

W

wa *n.* circle, ring
-wa ending for subject (1)
wakai *adj.* young
wakareru *vi. II.* to part
wakaru *vt. I.* to understand,
 to be understandable
wakasu *vt. I.* to boil
wakeru *vt. II.* to divide
waku *vi. I.* to boil
waku *n.* frame
warau *vt. I.* to laugh, to smile
wariai *n.* percentage, rate,
 ratio

waru *vt. I.* to break, to crack
warui *adj.* bad (5)
wasureru *vt. II.* to forget (25)
wata *n.* cotton
watakushi *pron. I* (1)
wazuka-no *n-adj.* few, little
-wo ending for object (17, 27)

Y

ya *n.* arrow
ya *postp.* and, also
yadoya *n.* inn, hotel
yaku *vt. I.* to burn
yaku *n.* office, post
ya-kumi eight sets, eight pairs
 (32)
yakusho *n.* public office
yama *n.* mountain
yameru *vt. II.* to stop, to give
yane *n.* roof [up
yasai *n.* vegetables
yaseru *vi. II.* to grow thin
yaseta (*adj.*) thin
yasui *adj.* cheap (34)
yasumeru *vt. II.* to give a rest
yasumi *n.* rest, vacation
yasumu *vt. I.* to rest, to take
 a vacation
yattsu *numeral* eight (29)
yawarakai *adj.* soft, pliable
yen, en unit of money (35)
yo-dai four "units"
yogoreru *vi. II.* to be soiled
yogoreta (*adj.*) soiled
yoi *adj.* good (5)

yo-ji four o'clock (35)
yokka four days, fourth day (36)
yoko *n.* side, width
yoko-no *n-adj.* sidewise, horizontal
yokogiru *vt. I.* to cross over
yoku *n.* greed, desire
yokubaru *vi. I.* to be greedy
yokubatta (*adj.*) greedy
yo-kumi four sets, four pairs (32)
yo-mai four sheets (32)
yomu *vt. I.* to read (17)
yon-hai four (cup)-fuls (32)
yon-hiki four "heads" (32)
yon-hon four "sticks" (32)
yon-satsu four volumes (32)
yon-sen four sen (35)
yoo *postp.* like, as
yoo *n.* work, business
yoofuku *n.* European style clothing
yooi *n.* preparation
yooi-suru *vt. irr.* to prepare
yooka eight days, eighth day of the month (36)
yori *postp.* from, more – than (34)
yorokobi *n.* delight
yorokobu *vt. I.* to be glad about
yoru *n.* night, evening
yo-sa *n.* goodness
yottari four persons (32)

yottsu *numeral* four (28)
yowai *adj.* weak
yo-yen four yen (35)
yu, o-yu *n.* hot water, bath
yubi *n.* finger
yubiwa *n.* ring
yuka *n.* floor (11)
yuki *n.* snow
yume *n.* dream
yunomi *n.* drinking cup (26)
yurumeru *vt. II.* to loosen
yurumu *vi. I.* to become loose
yurusu *vt. I.* to forgive, to permit
yuubin *n.* mail, post
yuuki *n.* courage

Z

zabuton *n.* cushion (16)
zaimoku *n.* lumber
zaisan *n.* property
zankoku-na *n-adj.* cruel
zashiki *n.* parlour (16)
zatsu-na *n-adj.* miscellaneous, coarse
zei *n.* tax
zeitaku-na *n-adj.* extravagant
zettai-no *n-adj.* absolute
zoku-suru *vi. irr.* to belong
zoo *n.* elephant
zoori *n.* sandals (39)
zubon *n.* trousers
zurui *adj.* crafty, unfair
zuuzuushii *adj.* shameless, impudent

English-Japanese Vocabulary

A

- able, be** dekiru *vi. II.* (48);
 -areru, -rareru *auxil. v.* (47)
about bakari, hodo *suf.*
absolute zettai-no *n.-adj.*
accidental guuzen-no *n.-adj.*
accountant, accounts kaikei
accustomed nareta (*adj.*) [*n.*
accustomed, become nareru
vi. II.
ache, to itamu *vi. I.*
acid san *n.*
acquire, to toru *vt. I., eru vt. II.*
add, to tsukeru *vt. II.* soeru
vt. II.
adjust, to choosetsu-suru *vt.*
irr.
adjustment choosetsu *n.*
adrift, set nagasu *vt. I.*
advance, to susumu *vi. I.*
advertise, to kookoku-suru
vt. irr.
advertisement kookoku *n.*
aeroplane hikooki *n.*
afternoon gogo, hiru-sugi *n.*
again mata *adv.*
age toshi *n.* nen *suf.*
agent dairi, daihyoo *n.*
ago mae *adv.* (35)
agriculture noogyoo *n.*
air kuuki *n.*
airplane hikooki *n.*
alcove tokonoma *n.* (16)
alive iki-te-iru (*adj.*)
all mina, subete *n., n.-adj.*
almost hotondo *adv.*
already moo (43), sude-ni *adv.*
also mo, mata *postp.*
always itsumo *adv.* (15)
among -de, -no naka-de, -no
 naka-ni (34)
ancestor sosen, senzo *n.*
and to (4), te, ya *postp.*, soshite
con. (14)
anger ikari *n.*
angle kaku *n.*
angry, be okoru, ikaru *vi. I.*
animal (living thing) doo-
 butsu, iki-mono *n.*
another hoka-no, moo hitotsu-
 no *n.-adj.* (49)
answer, to kotaeru *vi. II.*
answer kotae, henji *n.*
ant ari *n.*
anxiety shinpai *n.* [*irr.*
anxious, be shinpai-suru *vt.*
anything nandemo, nanika;
 not anything nanimo
apologize, to ayamaru *vi. I.*
apparently rashii *adj.*
apple ringo *n.*
appropriate tekitoo na *n.-adj.*,
 choodo-yoi *adj.*

approval sansei *n.*
 approve, to sansei-suru *vi. irr.*
 April Shigatsu (36)
 argue, to giron-suru *vt. irr.*
 argument giron, ron *n.*
 arm ude *n.*
 armament buki, busoo *n.*
 army rikugun, guntai *n.*
 arrange, to tehai-suru, tsugoo-
 suru, seiri-suru *vt. irr.*
 arrangement tehai, seiri *n.*
 arrival toochaku *n.*
 arrive, to tsuku *vi. I.*
 arrow ya *n.*
 art gijutsu (technique), gei-
 jutsu, bijutsu (fine arts) *n.*
 as yoo-ni, hodo *postp.*
 as far as made *postp.* (20)
 ashamed, be hajiru *vt. II.*
 ashes hai *n.*
 at ni (9), de, nite *postp.*
 at once sugu-ni *adv.* (47)
 attach, to tsukeru *vt. II.*
 attack, to semeru *vt. II.*, koo-
 geki-suru *vt. irr.*
 attack koogeki *n.*
 attention chuui *n.*
 attitude taido *n.*
 audible, be kikoeru *vi. II.*
 August Hachigatsu (36)
 aunt oba *n.*
 authority ken-i *n.* [(*adj.*)
 automatic jidoo, jidoo-teki
 automobile jidoo-sha *n.* (52)
 autumn aki *n.*

average heikin *n.*
 average, to heikin-suru *vt. irr.*
 avoid, to sakeru *vt. II.*

B

back ushiro (12), senaka *n.*
 back side ura *n.*, ushiro *n.* (12)
 bacteria baikin *n.*
 bad warui *adj.* (5)
 bag fukuro, kaban (suitcase) *n.*
 ball tama, mari *n.*
 bamboo take *n.*
 bank ginkoo *n.*
 bank (embankment) dote,
 tsutsumi *n.*
 bank note satsu, shihei *n.*
 banquet enikai *n.*
 base dai *n.*
 basement chikashitsu *n.*
 basin tarai, senmenki *n.*
 basis moto *n.*
 basket kago *n.*
 bath furo, yu *n.*
 battle tatakai, sentoo *n.*
 be, to aru *vi. irr.* (41), iru *vi. II.*
 (10), oru *vi. I.*, gozai-masu
 beans mame *n.*
 bear, to (bring forth) umu *vt. I.*
 beautiful utsukushii *adj.*
 beauty utsukushisa *n.*
 because kara *con.* (47)
 become, to naru *vi. I.* (46, 54)
 bed toko, shindai *n.*
 bee hachi *n.*
 beer biiru *n.*

- before mae *adv.* (35)
 beggar kojiki *n.*
 begin, to hajimeru *vt. II.*
 hajimaru *vi. I.* (42)
 beginning hajime *n.*
 behind -no ushiro-ni (12)
 believe, to shinjiru *vt. II.*
 belong, to zoku-suru, fuzoku-
 suru *vi. irr.*
 belt obi *n.*
 bend, to mageru *vt. II.*, maga-
 ru *vi. I.*, oru *vt. I.*, oreru *vi. II.*
 between naka (11), aida *n.*
 bicycle jitensha *n.* (52)
 big ookii *adj.* (5)
 bind, to (as a book) tojiru *vt. II.*
 bird tori *n.*
 bite, to kamu *vt. I.*
 bitter nigai *adj.*
 black kuro *n.*, kuroi *adj.*
 blood chi *n.*
 blow, to fuku *vi. I.*
 blue ao *n.*, aoi *adj.*
 board ita *n.*
 boat fune *n.*
 body karada *n.*
 boil, to niru *vt. II.*, wakasu
 vt. I., waku *vi. I.*
 boiled rice gohan *n.* (22)
 bolt (screw) neji *n.*
 bone hone *n.*
 book hon *n.* (1)
 bookcase honbako *n.* (11)
 border sakai *n.*
 born, be umareru *vi. II.*
 borrow kariru *vt. II.*
 bottle bin *n.*
 boundary sakai, kyookai *n.*
 bow, to rei-suru, ojigi-suru
 vi. irr.
 bowl donburi, o-wan, chawan
 box hako *n.* (4) [*n.*
 boy otoko-no ko (42), kodomo *n.*
 brain noo *n.*
 branch eda *n.*
 brass shinchuu *n.*
 bread pan *n.*
 break, to kowasu (25, 49), oru
 (bend), waru (crack), yaburu
 (tear) *vt. I.*
 break, to kowareru, oreru
 (bend), wareru (crack), yabu-
 reru (tear) *vi. II.*
 breakfast asa-gohan (26), asa-
 meshi *n.*
 breath iki *n.*
 breathe, to iki-wo suru
 brick renga *n.*
 bridge hashi *n.* [(24)
 bring, to motte-kuru *vt. irr.*
 brush hake, fude (writing
 brush) *n.*
 bucket baketsu, teoke *n.*
 bud me, tsubomi (budding
 flower) *n.*
 Buddha Hotoke-sama, Butsu
 build, to tateru *vt. II.*
 bunch taba *n.*
 bundle tsu'sumi *n.*
 burn, to yaku, moyasu *vt. I.*

- burn, to yakeru, moeru *vi. I.*
 bury, to umeru, uzumeru *vt. II.*
 buried, become umaru, uzumaru *vi. I.*
 business shigoto, yoo (work); torihiki (transaction) *n.*
 busy isogashii *adj.*
 but keredomo (14), shikashi
 butterfly choocho *n.* [*con.*
 button botan *n.*
 buy, to kau *vt. I.* (21)
 by de, motte *postp.*
 by means of -de *postp.* (38)
- C**
- cake kashi, o-kashi *n.*
 calendar koyomi *n.*
 call, to iu *vi., vt. I.* (38)
 can -areru, -rareru, *auxil. v.* (47), dekiru *vi. II.* (48)
 can kan *n.*
 cane tsue *n.*
 car kuruma *n.*
 card fuda, meishi (name card)
 carp fish koi *n.*
 carp streamer koi-nobori *n.*
 cash genkin *n.* [(46)
 cat neko *n.*
 catch, to toru *vt. I.,* (23) tsukamaeru *vt. II.*
 cause gen-in *n.*
 ceiling tenjoo *n.* (16)
 cement semento *n.* (16)
 center mannaka, chuuoo *n.*
 certain(sure)tashika-nan-*adj.*
- certain aru (*adj.*)
 chain kusari *n.*
 chair isu *n.* (34)
 chance kikai, ori *n.*
 change, to kawaru *vi. I.* henka-suru *vi. irr.*
 change, to kaeru *vt. II.*
 change henka *n.*
 chapter shoo *n.*
 character seishitsu, seikaku *n.*
 charcoal sumi *n.*
 charge, take azukaru *vt. I.*
 charming kawaii *adj.*
 cheap yasui *adj.* (34)
 cheat, to gomakasu, damasu
 chemical kusuri *n.* [*vt. I.*
 chemistry kagaku *n.*
 cherry sakura-no ki (tree), sakuranbo (fruit) *n.*
 chest (breast) mune *n.*
 chest of drawers tansu *n.*
 chew, to kamu *vt. I.*
 chicken niwa-tori *n.*
 child ko, kodomo *n.* (33, 42, 51)
 china ware setomono, tooki *n.*
 choose, to erabu, yoru *vt. I.*
 chop sticks hashi, o-hashii *n.* (26)
 cinemaeiga, katsudoo-shashin
 circle maru, en, wa *n.* [*n.*
 city shi, machi *n.*
 civilization bunka, bunmei *n.*
 class kumi, kyuu, kaikyuu *n.*
 claw tsume *n.*
 clean kirei-na *n-adj.* (6)

- clock** tokei *n.*
clog, to tsumeru *vt. II.*
clogged, be tsumaru *vi. I.*
close, to shimeru, tojiru *vt. II.*
close, to shimaru *vi. I.*, tojiru *vi. II.*
closet todana *n.* (11)
cloth kire, nuno *n.*
clothing kimono *n.* (4), yoo-fuku (European style)
cloud kumo *n.*
club (association) kurabu *n.*
clumsy bukiyoo-na, heta-na
coal sekitan *n.* [*n.-adj.*]
coffee koohii *n.*
cold samui (weather), tsumetai (thing) *adj.*
coldness (degree of) samusa (weather), tsumetasa (thing) *n.*
colonization shokumin *n.*
colonize, to shokumin-suru *vt., vi. irr.*
colour iro *n.*
comb kushi *n.*
come, to kuru *vi. irr.* (19, 41)
come (command) koi
come out, to deru *vi., vt. II.*, de-te-kuru *vi. irr.* (24)
comfortable kokochi-yoi *adj.*
company (corporation) kai-sha *n.*
compare kuraberu *vt. II.*, hikaku-suru *vt. irr.*
comparison hikaku *n.*
complaint fuhei *n.*
compromise dakyoo *n.*
compromise, to dakyoo-suru *vi. irr.*
concerning -ni tsuite
condition jootai, arisama *n.*
connect, to tsunagu *vt. I.*
connection renraku *n.*
conscious, be ishiki-ga aru
consciousness ishiki *n.*
console, to nagusameru *vt. II.*
consult, to soodan-suru *vt. irr.*
consultation soodan *n.*
contact renraku *n.*, to contact renraku-suru *vi. irr.*
contest kyoosoo *n.* to contest kyoosoo-suru *vi. irr.*, arasou *vt. I.*
continue, to tsuzukeru *vt. II.*, tsuzuku *vi. I.*
convenience benri, tsugoo *n.*
convenient benri-na *n.-adj.*, tsugoo-yoi *adj.*
cook ryoori-nin *n.*
cook, to ryoori-suru *vt. irr.*
cooking ryoori, kappoo *n.*
cool suzushii *adj.*, coolness suzushisa *n.*
cool, to hiyasu *vt. I.*
cool, become hieru *vi. II.*
copper doo *n.*
corner kado, sumi *n.*
correct tadashii *adj.*
correct, to naosu *vt. I.*
correct, become naoru *vi. I.*

- correspondence** tsuushin *n.*
cost atai, hiyoo *n.*
cotton wata, momen *n.*
cough seki *n.*, to cough seki-suru *vi. irr.*
count kanjoo *n.*
count, to kazoeru *vt. II.* (52), kanjoo-suru *vt. irr.*
counterfeit nise-no *n.-adj.*
country (nation) kuni *n.*
countryside inaka *n.*
courage yuuki *n.*
cover futa *n.*
cow (ox) ushi *n.*
crafty zurui *adj.*
crazy kichigai-no *n.-adj.*
crazy person kichigai *n.*
crease orime *n.*
crime tsumi *n.*
crooked magatta (*adj.*)
cross over, to yokogiru *vt. I.*
crowd mure, gunshuu *n.*
cruel mugoi *adj.*, zankoku-na *n.-adj.*
cry, to naku *vi. I.*
culture bunka, kyooyoo (personal) *n.*
cupboard todana *n.* (11)
cushion zabuton *n.* (16)
custom fuuzoku, shuukan (habit) *n.*
cut, to kiru *vt. I.*
- D**
- damage** gai, songai *n.*
damage, to kowasu *vt. I.*, gaisuru *vt. irr.*
dance odori *n.*
dance, to odoru *vt. I.*
danger kiken *n.*
dangerous abunai *adj.*, kiken-na *n.-adj.*
dark kurai *adj.*
day hi *n.*, nichu *suf.* (36)
day time hiru *n.*
December Juu-ni-gatsu (36)
decide, to kimeru *vt. II.*
decided, become kimaru *vi. I.*
decorate, to kazaru *vt. I.*
decoration kazari *n.*
deep fukai *adj.*
defend, to mamoru *vt. I.*, fusegu *vt. I.*
delight yorokobi *n.*
deliver, to todokeru *vt. II.*
deposit, to azukeru (entrust) *vt. II.*, tameru (pile up) *vt. II.*
depth fukasa *n.*
deputy dairi (agent) *n.*
desire nozomi, yoku *n.*
desire, to nozomu *vt. I.*, hoshigaru *vt. I.*
desirous -tai (52), hoshii *adj.*
desk tsukue *n.* (15) [(5)]
detestable nikui, nikurashii *adj.*
device (mechanism) shikake *n.*
device, make shikakeru *vt. II.*
devoted chuugi-na (for master), kookoo-na (for parents),

- chuujiitsu-na (faithful in general) *n.-adj.*
 devotion chuugi (for master), kookoo (for parents), chuujiitsusa (faithfulness in general) *n.*
 dew tsuyu *n.*
 dictionary jibiki, jisho *n.*
 die, to shinu *vi. I.* (54)
 different chigau, chigatta (*adj.*)
 difficult muzukashii *adj.*, konnan-na *n.-adj.*
 difficulty muzukashisa, konnan *n.*
 dig, to horu *vt. I.*
 dining room shokudoo *n.*
 dining table chabu-dai *n.* (26)
 diplomacy gaikoo *n.*
 direct, to sashizu-suru, shihai-suru *vt. irr.*
 direction (command) shihai, sashizu; (line of course) hoogaku *n.*
 dirty kitanai *adj.* (6)
 disagreeable iya-na *n.-adj.*
 discourteous burei-na *n.-adj.*
 discover, to hakken-suru *vt. irr.*, mitsukeru *vt. II.*
 discovery hakken *n.*
 disease byooki *n.*
 disgraced, be haji-wo kaku
 dislike, to kirau *vt. I.*
 dissolve, to tokeru *vi. II.*, tokasu *vt. I.*
 distance kyori, toosa *n.*
 distinct hakkiri-shita (*adj.*)
 do, to suru *vt. irr.* (17, 41), yaru *vt. I.*, itashi-masu
 dog inu *n.* (10)
 doll ningyoo *n.*
 door to *n.* (28)
 doubt utagai *n.*
 doubt, to utagau *vt. I.*
 drama shibai, geki *n.*
 drawer hikidashi *n.* (33)
 dream yume *n.*
 dream, to yume-wo miru
 dress kimono *n.* (4)
 drink, to nomu *vt. I.*
 drinking cup yunomi *n.*
 drip, to tareru *vi. II.*
 drip, let (to spill) tarasu *vt. I.*
 drop shizuku *n.*
 dry kawaita (*adj.*)
 dry, to kawakasu *vt. I.*
 dry, to kawaku *vi. I.*
 dull tsumaranai (uninteresting) *adj.*, nibui (slow, dull)
 dust chiri, hokori *n.* [*adj.*]
 duty gimu *n.*
 dwelling sumai *n.*, to dwell sumau *vi. I.*

E

- ear mimi *n.*
 early hayai *adj.*
 earnest majime-na *n.-adj.*
 earth chikyuu (the globe) tsuchi (ground) *n.*

- earthquake jishin *n.*
 east higashi *n.* [*adj.* II., shoorei-suru *vt. irr.*
 easy yasashii *adj.*, raku-na *n.* end owari, oshimai *n.*
 eat, to taberu *vt. II.*, kuu *vt. I.* end, to owaru *vi. I.*, oshimai-
 economy, economics keizai *n.* ni naru
 edge heri *n.*, edge of a knife English language Ei-go *n.* (38)
 ha *n.* enjoy, to tanoshimu *vt. I.*
 educate, to kyooiku-suru *vt.* enough juubun *n-adj.*
 education kyooiku *n.* [*irr.* enter, to hairu *vi. vt. I.* (39)
 egg tamago *n.* entirely mina, subete (*adv.*)
 eight yattsu, hachi *n-adj.* (29, entrance iri-guchi, kuchi *n.*
 30); — days yooka, — pairs, entrance hall genkan *n.* (39)
 — sets yakumi (32) etiquette reigi *n.*
 elder brother ani *n.* Europe Yooroppa, Seiyoo
 elder sister ane *n.* European Seiyoo-no *n-adj.*,
 election senkyo *n.*, to elect Seiyoo-jin (people) *n.*
 senkyo-suru *vt. irr.* even sae *postp.*
 electricity denki *n.* evening ban *n.*
 electric car (street car) densha every mai *pref.*, goto-ni *suf.*
n. (16) examine, to mi-te-miru *vt. II.*
 electric light dentoo (16) (24), shiraberu *vt. II.*
 elephant zoo *n.* example rei *n.*
 eleven juu-ichi *n-adj.* (30); excell, to sugureru *vi. II.*
 — minutes juu-ippun, — excellent sugureta (*adj.*)
 volumes juu-issatsu (32) excite, to shigeki-suru *vt. irr.*
 eliminate, to habuku *vt. I.* excited, be sawagu *vt. I.*
 emergency hijoo *n.* exercise (physical) undoo *n.*
 Emperor Kootei *n.*, Japanese exercise, to undoo-suru *vi. irr.*
 Emperor Tennoo *n.* expensive takai *adj.* (13, 34)
 Empire Teikoku *n.* (54) experience keiken *n.*
 employ, to tsukau *vt. I.* (37) experience, to keiken-suru
 Empress Jo-oo *n.*; Japanese *vt. irr.*
 Empress Koogoo *n.* explain, to setsumei-suru *vt.*
 empty kara-na, kara-no *n-adj.* *irr.*
 enclosure kakoi *n.* explanation setsumei *n.*

explode, to bakuhatsu-suru,
haretsu-suru *vi. irr.*
explosion bakuhatsu, haretsu
eye me *n.*

F

fabric ori-mono *n.*
face (countenance) kao *n.*
fact koto, jissai (reality) *n.*
factory koojoo *n.*
fail, to shippai-suru *vi. irr.*
failure shippai *n.*
faint (dim) kasuka-na *n.-adj.*
faint, to kizetsu-suru *vi. irr.*
faithful chuujitsu-na, chuugi-
na (to master), kookoo-na
(to parents) *n.-adj.*
fall, to chiru (scatter) *vi. I.*,
furu (rain) *vi. I.*, ochiru (drop
down) *vi. II.*, taoreru (topple
over) *vi. II.*
familiar shitashii *adj.*
family uchi (home), katei
(family circle) *n.*
far tooi *adj.* (51)
far as, as made *postp.*
farm noojoo *n.*
farmer hyakushoo, noofu *n.*
fashion ryuukoo *n.*
fat abura *n.*
fat futotta (*adj.*)
fat, grow futoru *vi. I.*
father chichi, o-too-san *n.*
fatigue tsukare *n.*
fear osore *n.*

fear, to osoreru *vt. II.*
fearful osoroshii, kowai *adj.*
feast go-chisoo *n.*
feather hane *n.*
February Nigatsu (36)
feel, to kanjiru *vt. II.*
feeling kanji *n.*
female mesu *n.* & *n.-adj.*
fence kakoi, kakine *n.*
festival matsuri, o-matsuri *n.*
fever netsu *n.* [(46)
few wazuka-na, sukoshi-no *n.-*
adj. (44)
field nohara, hatake (farm
field) *n.*
fifth day itsukame; **fifth day**
of the month itsuka
fight tatakai, kenka *n.*
fight, to tatakau *vi. I.*
filial devotion kookoo *n.*
fill, to mitasu *vt. I.*, ippai-ni
suru
fine rippa-na (magnificent) *n.-*
adj. (7), komakai (small) *adj.*
fine arts geijutsu, bijutsu *n.*
fine weather hare *n.*, yoi tenki
finger yubi *n.*
finish, to sumu *vi. I.*
finish, to shimau *vt. I.*
fire hi *n.*
fire (house on fire) kaji *n.*
fire brazier hibachi *n.* (15)
first day of the month Tsui-
tachi (36) [(36)
first year of an era Gan-nen

- fish** sakana *n.* (46), uo *n.*
five itsutsu (29), go (30) *n.-adj.*;
 five days itsuka, **five pairs**,
 five sets itsu-kumi (32)
flag hata *n.*
flame honoo *n.*
flat taira-na *n.-adj.* (6)
flea nomi *n.*
flee, to nigeru *vi. II.*
floor yuka *n.*
floor (storey) kai *suf.* (52)
flow, to nagareru *vi. II.*
flower hana *n.* [*n.* (26)
flower arrangement ikebana
flower vase kabin *n.* (16)
fly, to tobu *vi. I.*
fly (insect) hai, hae *n.*
fog kiri *n.*
fold, to oru *vt. I.*
fond of, be suku *vt. I.*, suki
 n.-adj. (52)
fool baka *n., interj.*
foot ashi *n.*
foreign country gaikoku *n.*
forget, to wasureru *vt. II.* (25)
forgive me, please gomen-
 nasai
four yottsu (28), shi (30) *n.-adj.*;
 — **days** yokka, — **o'clock**
 yo-ji, — **persons** yottari, —
 sheets yo-mai, — **sen** yon-
 sen, — **yen** yo-yen, — **vol-**
 umes yon-satsu (32)
frame waku, fuchi *n.*
free jiyuu-na *n.-adj.*
- free of charge** tada-no *n.-adj.*
freeze, to kooru *vi. I.*
friction masatsu *n.*
Friday Kin-yoobi *n.* (36)
friend tomo-dachi *n.*, good
 friends nakayoshi *n.*
from yori (19, 34), kara *postp.*
front mae *n.*, in front of -no
 mae-ni (12)
frontispiece kuchi-e *n.* (42)
fruit kudamono, mi *n.*
 -ful hai *suf.* (31)
full ippai *n.-adj.*
full, become michiru *vi. II.*,
 ippai-ni naru
furniture kagu, doogu *n.*
future mirai *n.*
- G
- garden** niwa *n.* (10)
gas gasu *n.*
gate mon *n.*
gather, to atsumaru *vi. I.*
gather, to atsumeru *vt. II.*
gathering atsumari *n.*
gay hade-na, nigiyaka-na *n.-*
 adj.
genteel joohin-na *n.-adj.*
geography chiri *n.*
get up, to okiru *vi. II.*
girl onna-no ko *n.* (42)
give, to ageru (send up) *vt. II.*,
 (27) yaru (to inferior person)
 vt. I., ataeru *vt. II.*
give, to kudasaru (send down)

- vt. I. (27)*
give up, to yameru (to stop),
 akirameru (to lose hope)
vt. II.
glad, be yorokobu *vt. I.*
glass garasu, koppu (drinking
 glass) *n.*
go, to iku *vi. I.*
god kami, kami-sama *n.*
gold kin *n.*
good yoi, ii *adj. (5)*
goodbye sayonara (39)
good friend nakayoshi *n., n-*
goodness yosa *n.* [*adj. (42)*
go on foot, to aruite-iku *vi.,*
vt. I. (24)
go out, to deru *vi., vt. II. (24),*
 de-te-iku (24)
go over, to (to cross) koeru
vt. II., kosu vt. I.
go up, to agaru, noboru *vt. I.*
government seifu *n.*
government office yakusho,
 yakuba *n.*
grade kyuu(class), saka(hill)*n.*
grain tsubu (particle), koku-
 motsu (cereals) *n.*
grand ookii *adj., rippa-na n-*
adj.
grandfather o-jii-san, sofu *n.*
grandmother o-baa-san, sobo
grapes budoo *n.* [*n.*
grass kusa *n.*
gratis tada, muryoo *n-adj.*
gratitude kansha *n.*
- grave** haka; **graveyard** haka-
 ba, bochi *n.*
gravel jari *n.*
greed yoku *n.*
greedy yokubatta (*adj.*)
green midori-no *n-adj.*
greet, to aisatsu-suru *vi. irr.*
greeting aisatsu, rei *n.*
grieve, to kanashimu *vt. I.*
grund jimen *n.*
group dantai *n.*
grow, to nobiru *vi. II., naru*
vi. I. (46) ookiku *naru*
guard bannin *n.* [*irr.*
guard, to stand ban-suru *vt.*
guest kyaku, o-kyaku *n. (16,39)*
guidance shidoo *n.*
guide annai *n.*
guide, to annai-suru *vt. irr.*
gun teppoo *n.*
- ## H
- hair** ke, kami (hair of the
 head) *n.*
half han (35), hanbun *n.*
half past han, han sugi (35)
hand te *n.*
handle e *n.*
hang, to kakaru *vi. I.*
hang, to kakeru *vt. II.* [(16)
hanging scroll kakemono *n.*
happiness koofuku, saiwai *n.*
happy koofuku-na, saiwai-na
n-adj., medetai (worthy of
 congratulation) *adj.*

- harbour** minato *n.*
hard katai *adj.*
hardness katasa *n.*
hardship kurushimi *n.*
harm gai *n.*
harmonize, to choowa-suru
vi. irr.
harmony choowa *n.*
hat booshi *n.*
hate, to nikumu *vt. I.*
have, to motsu *vt. I.* (18)
have been to, to itte-kuru *vi.*
irr. (24)
he sono hito, kare *pron.*
head atama, kashira (head-
 man) *n.*
health kenkoo *n.*
hear, to kiku *vt. I.*
heart shinzo, kokoro (mind)
heat netsu, atsusa *n.* [*n.*
heavy omoi *adj.*
height takasa *n.*
Hello (a call) moshi moshi
help tasuke, tetsudai *n.*
help, to tasukeru *vt. II.*, tetsu-
 dau *vt. I.*
hemp asa *n.*
here koko *pron.* (9)
hide, to kakusu *vt. I.*, kaku-
 reru *vi. II.*
high takai *adj.* (13, 34)
hill saka (slope), yama, oka
 (high ground) *n.*
hinge chootsugai *n.*
hip koshi *n.*
- history** rekishi *n.*
hoe kuwa *n.*
hold, to motsu *vt. I.* (18) nigiru
hole ana *n.* [*vt. I.*
holiday yasumi (vacation), sai-
 jitsu (flag day) *n.*
home uchi *n.* (14)
honest shoojiki-na *n-adj.*
 tadashii *adj.*
hope nozomi *n.*
hope, to nozomu *vt. I.*
horizontal suihei-na, yoko-no
n-adj.
horn tsuno, fue (trumpet) *n.*
horse uma *n.*
hospital byooiin *n.*
host shujin *n.* [*adj.*
hot atsui *adj.*, karai (peppery)
hot water yu, o-yu *n.*
hotel yadoya, hoteru (foreign
 style) *n.*
hour jikan *n.* (35)
house uchi, ie *n.* (14)
house to let kashiya *n.*
however shikashi, keredomo
 (but) *con.*; ikani, donna-ni
 (as however much) *adv.*
how many? ikutsu *n-adj.* (29)
 iku-*pref.*
how many days? iku-nichi,
 nan-nichi; **how many**
weeks? iku-shuukan, nan-
 shuukan; **how many**
months? nan-ka-getsu (36);
how many (cup)-fuls? nan-

- bai; how many "heads"? influence eikyoo *n.* [irr.
 nan-biki; how many influence, to eikyoo-suru *vi.*
 "sticks"? nan-bon (32) injure, to itameru, kizutsu-
 how much? ikura (35) dono- keru *vt. II.*
 kurai *n-adj.* iku-*pref.* injury kizu, kega *n.*
 human being ningen *n.* ink sumi, inku, inki *n.*
 hundred hyaku *n-adj.* inn yadoya *n.*
 hurry, to isogu *vt. I.* inquire, to tou *vt. I.*, tazuneru
 hydrant (water tap) suidoo- *vt. II.*
 sen *n.* insane kichigai-no *n-adj.*,
 kichigai (insane person) *n.*
 I insect mushi *n.* (10)
 I watakushi (1), watashi, boku inside naka (11) uchi *n.*
 (used by young men), ore insurance hoken *n.*
 (used by men), jibun (formal) insure, to hoken-wo tsukeru
 ice koori *n.* [pron. intelligence chie, chinoo *n.*
 idea kangae *n.* intelligent rikoo-na *n-adj.*
 if moshimo... naraba, moshi- (13) kashikoi *adj.*
 mo... kereba (53) intend, to kokorozasu *vt. I.*
 imagination soozoo *n.* intention kokorozashi, kan-
 immediately sugu-ni *adv.* gae *n.*
 Imperial Teikoku *n-adj.* interest kyoomi (amusement),
 Imperial University Teikoku rishi (profit) *n.*
 Daigaku *n.* (54) interesting omoshiroi *adj.*
 imply, to fukumu *vt. I.* (6) (51) kyoomi-no aru
 important taisetsu-na *n-adj.* international kokusai, koku-
 impudent zuuzuushii *adj.* sai-teki *n-adj.*
 impure nigotta (*adj.*) fujun-na interrupt, to jama-suru *vt. irr.*
n-adj. [n. interruption jama *n.*
 impurity nigori, fujun-butsu intimate shitashii *adj.*
 in ni (9, 11), de (34) *postp.*, -no introduce, to shookai-suru
 naka-ni (11), -no naka de (34) *vt. irr.*
 industry koogyoo *n.* introduction shookai *n.*
 inexpensive yasui *adj.* (34) invent, to hatsumeisuru *vt.*
 inferior ototta, yoku-nai (*adj.*) *irr.*

invention hatsumeï *n.*
invitation shootai, maneki *n.*
invite, to maneku *vt. I.*, shootai-suru *vt. irr.*
iron tetsu, hinoshi (flat iron) *n.*
iron, to hinoshi-wo kakeru
it sore, are *pron.*; its sono, sore-no, ano, are-no (*adj.*)
itchy kayui, kaii *adj.*

J

January Ichigatsu (36)
Japan Nippon, Nihon (15)
Japanese Nippon-no, Nihon-no *n-adj.* (15); Nippon-jin, Nihon-jin (Japanese person)
jar tsubo *n.* [*n.*]
jaw ago *n.*
joke joodan *n.*
judge saiban-kan *n.*
judge, to saiban-suru (to sit in judgment), handan-suru (to consider) *vt. irr.*
judgment saiban, handan *n.*
juice shiru, tsuyu *n.*
July Shichigatsu (36)
jump, to tobu *vi. I.*, haneru *vi. II.*
June Rokugatsu (36)

K

keep, to totte-oku (as keep a thing), mamoru (as keep a law) *vt. I.*
kerosene sekuyu *n.*

kettle kama, yakan, nabe *n.*
key kagi *n.*
kick, to keru *vt. I.*
kill, to korosu *vt. I.*
kind (sort) rui *n.*
kindness shinsetsu *n.*, kind shinsetsu-na *n-adj.* (13)
King Oo, Oo-sama *n.*
knee hiza *n.*
knot musubime (tie), kobu (hump) *n.*

know, to shiru *vt. I.*
knowledge chishiki *n.*

L

lacquer bowl o-wan *n.* (26)
ladder hashigo *n.*
land riku, chi *n.*
land, to jooriku-suru (from water), chakuriku-suru (from air) *vi. irr.*
language kotoba *n.*, -go *suf.*
last owari-no, oshimai-no *n-adj.*, sen-*pref.*; last day of the month misoka; last month sen-getsu; last week sen-shuu; last year kyo-nen, saku-nen (36)
late osoi *adj.*
later (future) nochi-ni *adv.* (52)
laugh, to warau *vt. I.*
laundry sentaku *n.*; to wash sentaku-suru *vt. irr.*
law hooritsu *n.*
laxative gezai *n.*

- lead, to** shidoo-suru *vt. irr.*, **light in weight** karui *adj.*
 michibiku *vt. I.*
leader shidoo-sha *n.*
leaf (of a plant) ha *n.*
league renmei *n.*
learn, to oboeru *vt. II.* (40)
learning gakumon *n.*
left hidari *n. & n-adj.* (12)
leg ashi *n.*
leisure hima *n.*
lend, to kasu *vt. I.*
length nagasa *n.*
lengthwise tate-no *n-adj.*
let, to (a house) kasu *vt. I.*
let, to -aseru, -saseru *auxil. v.*
 (50); **to let someone do**
 saseru *vt. II.* (50)
let us -mashoo (21)
letter (ideograph) ji, kana *n.*
letter (communication) tega-
 mi *n.* (23, 38)
liberty jiyuu *n.*
library toshokan (building),
 toshoshitsu (room) *n.*
lid futa *n.* (4)
lie uso, itsuwari *n.*
lie, to (to deceive) itsuwaru
vt. I., uso-wo tsuku
lie, to (to lie down) neru *vi. II.*
life inochi; seikatsu (livi-
 hood) *n.*
light hikari, akari *n.*
light (as against dark) akarui
adj.
light in colour usui *adj.*
like yoo-na *n-adj.*
like, to konomu *vt. I.*, -ga suki-
 de su (52)
limit kagiri, gendo *n.*
limit, to kagiru *vt. I.*
line sen, suji *n.*; **straight line**
 choku-sen
linen asa *n.*
lip kuchibiru *n.*
liquid eki *n.*
liquor sake *n.*
list hyoo *n.*
litre (unit of measure) rittoru
little (quantity) sukoshi-no,
 (44) wazuka-no *n-adj.*
live, to ikiru (to be alive) *vi. II.*,
 sumu (dwell) *vi. I.*, seikatsu-
 suru (to make a living) *vi. irr.*
lock joomae *n.*
long nagai *adj.* (54)
loosen, to yurumeru *vt. II.*,
 toku *vt. I.*
loosen, to yurumu *vi. I.*, tokeru
love ai *n.* [*vi. II.*]
love, to ai-suru *vt. irr.*
loveliness airashisa *n.*
lovely airashii *adj.*
low hikui *adj.* (34)
lower part (under side) shita *n.*
loyal chuugi-na (to master),
 chuujitsu-na *n-adj.*
loyalty chuugi (to master),
 chuujitsu *n.*
lucky medetai *adj.*, un-no yoi

lumber zaimoku *n.*

lung hai *n.*

M

machine kikai *n.*

mad kichigai *n.-adj.*; mad man
kichigai *n.*

magnificent trippa-nan *n.-adj.* (7)

maid servant jochuu *n.*

mail yuubin *n.*

Majesty, his or her Heika
suf. & n.

make, to tsukuru *vt. I.* (25, 49),
koshiraeru *vt. II.*

male osu *n. & n.-adj.*

man otoko (1), hito (person)
(10), ningen (human being) *n.*

manage, to shihai-suru, shori-
suru *vt. irr.*, atsukau *vt. I.*

management shihai, atsukai

manager shihai-nin *n.* [*n.*

many takusan-no (29), ooku-
no *n.-adj.*, ooi *adj.*

March San-gatsu (36)

mark shirushi, ten *n.*

marriage kekkon, konrei
(ceremony) *n.*

marry, to kekkon-suru *vi. irr.*

master shujin *n.*

matted floor tatami *n.*

matter koto, mono *n.*

May Go-gatsu (36)

meal go-han (22), meshi *n.*

mean, to imi-suru *vt. irr.*

meaning imi *n.*

means of, by de, *postp.* -wo
motte

measure masu, hakari *n.*

measure, to hakaru *vt. I.*

meat niku *n.* (23)

medical art ijutsu *n.*

medicine (chemical) kusuri *n.*

meet, to au, atsumaru *vi. I.*

meeting kai, atsumari *n.*

melt, to tokeru *vi. II.*, tokasu
vt. I., toku *vt. I.*

memorial kinen *n.* (54)

memorize, to oboeru *vt. II.*,
anki-suru *vt. irr.*

memory kioku, oboe *n.*

messenger tsukai *n.* (37)

metal kane, kinzoku *n.*

meter meetaa, meetoru *n.*

method hoohoo, shikata, yari-
kata *n.*

metre (unit of length) meetaa,
meetoru

middle mannaka, chuuoo *n.*

Middle School Chuugakkoo *n.*

mind kokoro *n.* [(54)

mineral matter koo-butsu *n.*

minute (unit of time) fun *n.* (35)

mirror kagami *n.*

mist kiri *n.*

mistake ayamari, machigai *n.*

mistake, to ayamaru *vt. I.*,
machigaeru *vt. II.*

mistaken machigatta (*adj.*)

mistress of a house okusan
n. (39)

- mix, to mazaru** *vi. I.*, mazeru *vt. II.*
modest otonashii *adj.*, kenson-na *n.-adj.*
moist shimetta, nureta (*adj.*)
moist, become shimeru *vi. I.*
 nururu *vi. II.*
moisten, to nurasu *vt. I.*
Monday Getsuyooobi (36)
money kane, o-kane, kinsen *n.*
month tsuki *n.*, gatsu *suf.*,
 getsu *suf.* (36)
moon tsuki *n.* (36)
more motto, moo *adv.* (34)
morning asa, gozen (forenoon)
mosquito ka *n.* [*n.*
moss koke *n.*
mother haha, o-kaa-san *n.*
motion undoo, ugoki *n.*
motion picture katsudoo-
 shashin, eiga *n.*
motor car jidoosha *n.* (52)
mountain yama *n.*
mouse nezumi *n.*
mouth kuchi *n.*
move, to ugoku *vi. I.*, hikkosu
 (move one's residence) *vt. I.*
movie katsudoo-shashin, eiga
 n.
Mr., Mrs., Miss., -san *suf.* (3)
much takusan-no *n.-adj.*
muddiness nigori *n.* (29)
muddy nigotta (*adj.*)
muddy, become nigoru *vi. I.*
muddy, make nigosu *vt. I.*
- museum** hakubutsu-kan *n.*
music ongaku *n.*
must -nakereba naranai, **must**
 not -tewa naranai (53)
mutual soogo, tagai-no *n.-adj.*
- N
- nail** kugi; **finger nail** tsume *n.*
name namae, na *n.* (54)
narrow semai *adj.* (7)
nation kuni *n.*
nature (quality) tachi, sei-
 shitsu *n.*
nature (the great nature)
 shizen *n.*
navy kaigun *n.*
near chikai *adj.* (51)
necessary hitsuyoo-na *n.-adj.*
necessity hitsuyoo *n.*
neck kubi *n.*
need, to iru *vi. I.* (27), hitsu-
 yoo to suru
needle hari *n.*
neighbourhood kinjo *n.*
neighbouring tonari-no (46),
 chikaku-no, kinjo-no *n.-adj.*
nerve shinkei (nervous sys-
 tem); dokyoo (courage) *n.*
net ami *n.*
new atarashii *adj.*
newness atarashisa *n.*
newspaper shinbun *n.* (17)
New Year's Day Ganjitsu (36)
next tsugi-no *n.-adj.*
next door tonari *n.* (46)

- next month** rai-getsu (36)
next week rai-shuu (36)
next year rai-nen, myoo-nen
night yoru *n.* [(36)
nine kokonotsu, ku, kyuu *n.*
 (29, 30)
nine days kokonoka (36)
ninth day kokonoka (36)
no ie *interj.* (3)
no good dame *n.-adj. & interj.*
noise oto, zatsu-on *n.*
noon o-hiru, shoogo *n.*
north kita *n.*
nose hana *n.* [51)
not nai, nu *auxil. v., adv.* (13,
not anything, nothing nani-
 mo *adv.* (27)
note nooto *n.*
not one, not any hitotsu-mo
adv. (28)
not yet mada *adv.* (43)
notify shiraseru *vt. II.*
novel shoosetsu, hanashi *n.*
November Juu-ichi-gatsu (36)
now ima *n., adv.* (20)
nude hadaka-no *n.-adj.*
number kazu, suu *n.*
number (ordinal) bangoo *n.*
 (33), dai *pref.*, ban *suf.*, ban-
 me *suf.* (33)
nut (fruit) mi *n.*
nut (screw) neji, meneji *n.*
- O**
- obey, to** shitagau *vi. I.*
object (purpose) mokuteki *n.*
object, to hantai-suru *vi. irr.,*
 iyagaru *vt. I.*
obligation giri *n.*
obstinate shitsukkoi *adj.*
obstruct, to samatageru *vt.*
II., jama-suru vt. irr.
obstruction jama, samatagen.
o'clock ji *suf.* (35)
October Juu-gatsu (36)
of no *postp.* (4)
office jimusho (room) (52);
 yaku (position) *n.*
officer, military shookoo *n.*
oil abura *n.*
old (antiquated) furui *adj.*
old (person) toshi-totta (*adj.*)
old man o-jii-san; **old woman**
 o-baa-san; **old person** toshi-
 yori *n.*
on ni (9), de *postp.*, -no ue-ni
 (11)
one hitotsu, ichi, *n.-adj.* (27,
 30); — (cup)-ful ippai, —
 “head” ippiki, — minute
 ippun, — person hitori, —
 set, — pair hito-kumi, —
 “stick” ippon, — volume
 issatsu (32, 35)
one more moo hitotsu (49)
onion negi *n.*
only tada, tatta *adv.*
open aita, hiraita (*adj.*)
open, to akeru *vt. II.* (17),
 hiraku *vt. I.*

- open, to** *aku vi. I. hiraku vi. I.*
operation (medical) *shujutsu n.*
oppose, to *hantai-suru vi. irr.*
opposite *hantai-no n.-adj.*
opposition *hantai n.*
order *chuumon n.*
order (command) *meirei n.*
order(sequence) *junjo, junban n.*
order, to *chuumon-suru vt. irr.; meirei-suru (to command) vt. irr.*
order that, in *tame-ni (54)*
order, to put in *katazukeru vt. II.*
ordinary *futsuu-no n.-adj.*
origin *moto n.*
ornament (to be set on *tokonoma*) *oki-mono n. (16)*
other *hoka-no (53), ta-no n.-adj.*
outdoors *soto, omote n.*
outside *soto, omote n.*
overcoat *gaitoo n.*
over-garment *haori n.*
overthrow, to *taosu vt. I.*
- P**
- paddy field** *ta n.*
page *peiji n. suf.*
pain *itami n.*
painful *itai (sore), kurushii (hard) adj.*
paint *penki, enogu n.*
pair *kumi (32), tsui n. & suf.*
- pan nabe n.**
paper *kami n. (31)*
paper door *fusuma (heavy) (16), shooji (light) n. (15)*
paper money *satsu n.*
parallel *heikoo-no n.-adj.*
parlour *zashiki n. (16)*
part *bubun n.*
part, to *wakareru, hanareru vi. II.*
pass, to *tooru vt. I.; sugiru vt. II.*
past *kako, mukashi n.*
past *sugi suf. (35)*
paste *nori n.*
pay, to *harau vt. I.*
pea *mame n.*
peace *heiwa n.*
peel, to *muku, hagu vt. I.*
pencil *enpitsu n. (8)*
percentage *wariai, buai n.*
perfect *kanzen-na n.-adj.*
perfection *kanzen n.*
permit *kyoka, yurushi n.*
permit, to *yurusu vt. I.*
person *hito (10), mono n.*
phonograph *chikuonki n.*
photograph *shashin n. (46)*
physician *isha n.*
physics *butsuri-gaku n.*
picture *e n. (39)*
piece *kire, hen, ko n. & suf.*
pig *buta n.*
pile up, to *kasaneru, tsumi-ageru vt. II.*

- pillar hashira *n.*
 pine tree matsu *n.*
 place tokoro (39), basho *n.*
 place, to oku *vt. I.* (46)
 plan keikaku *n.*
 plan, to keikaku-suru *vt. irr.*
 plant(plant life) shokubutsu *n.*
 play (game) asobi *n.*
 play, to (to have a good time)
 asobu *vi. I.* (42)
 play ground undoojoo *n.*
 please doozo *adv. & interj.* (28)
 pleased, be yorokobu *vt. I.*
 pleasure (recreation) tanoshi-
 mi *n.*
 pocket pokketto *n.*
 poem uta, shi *n.*
 point ten *n.*
 poison doku *n.*
 police keisatsu *n.*
 police man junsu *n.*
 polish, to migaku *vt. I.*
 polished migaita (*adj.*)
 politics seiji *n.*
 poor (destitute) binboo-na *n-
 adj.*
 porcelain jiki *n.*
 port minato *n.*
 position ichi *n.*, tokoro *n.* (39)
 possible, to be -areru, -rareru
 auxil. v. (47), dekiru *vi. II.* (48)
 post yuubin *n.*
 postage stamp kitte *n.*
 post box yuubin-bako *n.*
 post card hagaki *n.*
 potato imo *n.*
 powder kona *n.*
 praise, to homeru *vt. II.*
 pray, to inoru *vt. I.*
 precious daiji-na, taisetsu-na
 n-adj. (6)
 precision seimitsu *n.*
 prefecture ken *n.*
 preparation yooi, shitaku *n.*
 prepare, to yooi-suru, shitaku-
 suru *vt. irr.*
 pretty kirei-na *n-adj.* (6),
 utsukushii *adj.*
 price atai, nedan *n.*
 pride hokori, jiman *n.*
 Prince, Princess Miya-sama
 n.
 print, to insatsu-suru *vt. irr.*
 printing insatsu *n.*
 profit rieki, toku *n.*
 proof shooko; koosei (of
 printing) *n.*
 property zaisan *n.*
 public ooyake-no *n-adj.*
 pull, to hiku, hipparu *vt. I.*
 pump ponpu *n.*
 punish, to bassuru *vt. irr.*
 punishment batsu *n.*
 purple murasaki-no *n-adj.*
 purpose mokuteki *n.*
 push, to osu *vt. I.*
 push through, to toosu, oshi-
 toosu *vt. I.*
 put to (to place) oku *vt. I.*
 put away, to katazukeru *vt. II.*

put in, to ireru *vt. II.*
 put in order, to katazukeru
vt. II.
 put out, to dasu *vt. I.*
 put together, to awaseru *vt.*
II., tsunagu (connect) *vt. I.*

Q

quality shitsu, gara, tachi *n.*
 quantity bunryoo *n.*
 quarrel arasoi, kenka *n.*
 quarrel, to arasou *vt. I.*, ken-
 ka-suru *vt. irr.*
 Queen Jooo *n.*
 question toi, mondai *n.*
 quick hayai *adj.*
 quiet shiruka-na *n-adj.*, otona-
 shii *adj.*
 quite (entirely) mattaku, suk-
 kari *adv.*

R

radio rajio *n.*
 rail senro *n.*
 railway tetsudoo *n.*
 rain ame *n.*
 rain, to furu *vi. I.*
 raise, to ageru *vt. II.* (27, 46),
 okosu *vt. I.*
 rank retsu (column), kurai
 (position) *n.*
 rat nezumi *n.*
 rate wariai, buai *n.*
 reach, to tsuku, todoku *vi. I.*
 read, to yomu *vt. I.* (17)

real hontoo-no, jissai-no *n-adj.*
 reason wake, rikutsu *n.*
 receive, to ukeru *vt. II.*,
 uketoru *vt. I.*, morau *vt. I.*,
 itadaku *vt. I.*
 recommend, to susumeru *vt.*
II., suisen-suru *vt. irr.*
 recommendation suisen *n.*
 record kiroku *n.*
 record, to kiroku-suru *vt. irr.*
 recover, to naoru *vi. I.*, kai-
 fuku-suru *vi. irr.*
 recreation nagusami, tano-
 shimi *n.*
 red aka *n.* akai *adj.*
 reed mat tatami *n.* (15)
 regret kuyami (condolence) *n.*
 regret, to kuyamu *vt. I.*
 regulation kisoku, kimari,
 sadame *n.*
 relation kankei, shinrui (blood
 relation) *n.*
 religion shuukyoo *n.*
 remain, to nokoru, amaru *vi. I.*
 remainder nokori, amari *n.*
 remember, to oboeru *vt. II.*
 (40)
 repeat, to kurikaesu *vt. I.*
 report shirase, hookoku *n.*
 report, to shiraseru *vt. II.*,
 hookoku-suru *vt. irr.*
 represent, to daihyoo-suru
vt. irr.
 representative daihyoo *n.*
 request tanomi, negai *n.*

- request, to tanomu, negau *vt. I.*
 resemble, to niru *vi. II.*
 reserve yobi-no *n.-adj.*; enryo (modesty) *n.*
 respect sonkei *n.*
 respect, to sonkei-suru *vt. irr.* tootobu *vt. I.*
 responsibility sekinin *n.*
 rest yasumi (repose), nokori (remainder) *n.*
 rest, to yasumu *vt. I.*, yasumaseru *vt. II.*
 result kekka *n.*
 return kaeri (way back), rieki (profit) *n.*
 return, to kaeru *vi. I.*
 reverse sakasama (upside down), ushiro-muki (backward) *n. & n.-adj.*
 revise, to aratameru, kaeru *vt. II.*
 reward mukui, hooshuu *n.*
 rice kome (grain), gohan (boiled rice) *n.*
 rice bowl chawan *n.* (26)
 rice tub o-hitsu *n.* (26)
 rich kanemochi-no *n.-adj.* tonda (*adj.*)
 ride, to noru *vi. I.* (21)
 right (claim) kenri *n.*
 right (honest) tadashii *adj.*
 right migi *n.*, *n.-adj.* (12)
 ring wa, yubi-wa (finger ring) *n.*
 rise, to okiru (get up) *vi. II.* agaru (go up) *vi. I.*
 river kawa *n.*
 rivet byoo *n.*
 road michi, dooro *n.*
 roll, to korogasu *vt. I.*, korogaru *vi. I.*, maku (to wind) *vt. I.*
 roof yane *n.*
 room heya (7), shitsu *n.*
 root ne, nemoto *n.*
 rope nawa, himo *n.*
 rose bara *n.*
 rot, to kusaru *vi. I.*
 rough arai *adj.*
 round marui *adj.*
 rub, to suru, kosuru *vt. I.*
 rule kisoku *n.*
 rule, to shihai-suru *vt. irr.*
 ruler shihai-sha *n.*; joogi, monosashi (instrument) *n.*
 run, to hashiru *vi. I.* (42), kakeru *vi. II.*
 run away, to nigeru *vi. II.*
 rust sabi *n.*
 rust, to sabiru *vi. II.*
- S
- sad kanashii *adj.*
 safe anzen-na, daijoubu-na *n.-adj.*
 safe (a vault) kinko *n.*
 safety anzen, buji *n.*
 sail ho *n.* [*vi. irr.*]
 sail, to (to start) shuppan-suru

- sake of, for the tame-ni**
salt shio *n.*
salty karai, shio-karai *adj.*
salute, to keirei-suru *vi. irr.*
same onaji *adj. & n-adj.*
sand suna *n.*
sandals zoori *n.* (39)
sash obi (belt) *n.*
satisfactory manzoku-na *n-adj.*
satisfied, be manzoku-suru *vi. irr.*
Saturday Doyoobi *n.* (36)
save, to (to help) tasukeru *vt. II.*
save, to (to store) tameru, takuwaeru *vt. II., chochiku-suru vt. irr.*
saving chochiku, takuwa *n.*
say, to iu *vi., vt. I.* (38)
scale hakari (balance), uroko (of fish), memori (graduated marks), kibo (proportions) *n.*
scatter, to chiru *vi. I.; chirasu vt. I.*
school gakkoo *n.* (14)
science kagaku *n.*
scientific kagaku-teki-na *n-adj.*
scissors hasami *n.*
scold, to (to reprimand) shikaru *vt. I.*
screw neji *n.*
sea umi *n.*
seashore kaigan, hama *n.*
seat seki *n.*
second (unit of time) byoo *n.* (35)
second tsugi-no, nibanme-no, *n-adj.* (33)
second day of the month futsuka (36)
secret himitsu *n.*
secret, keep himitsu-ni suru see, to miru *vt. II.* (18)
seed tane *n.*
self jibun, jishin *n.*
selfish rikoshugi-na, waga-mama-na *n-adj.*
sell, to uru *vt. I.*
send, to okuru *vt. I.*
sentence bun, bunshoo *n.*
separate betsu-no *n-adj.*
separate, to wakeru *vt. II., hanasu vt. I.*
separated hanareta (*adj.*)
September Kugatsu (36)
serene hogaraka-na *n-adj.*
serious majime-na (earnest), taihen-na *n-adj., omoi adj.*
servant meshitsukai *n.*
serve, to (to wait upon) kyuuji-suru *vt. irr., tsukaeru vi. II.*
set kumi *suf. & n.* (32)
set up, to tateru *vt. II.*
seven nanatsu, shichi *n-adj.* (29, 30); **seven days, seventh day nanuka** (36)
sewerage gesui *n.*
shade (canopy) hiyoke *n.*

- shadow** kage *n.*
shake, to furu, yusuburu, furimawasu *vt. I.*
shallow asai *adj.*
shame haji *n.*
shame, put to hazukashimeru *vt. II.*
shape katachi *n.*
sharp surudo *adj.*
shatter, to kudakeru *vi. II.*, kudaku *vt. I.*
shed, to (tears) nagasu *vt. I.*
sheet mai *suf.* (31)
shelf tana *n.* (9)
shell fish kai *n.*
shine, to hikaru, kagayaku *vi. I.*
ship fune *n.*
shirt shatsu (under shirt), wai-shatsu (white shirt) *n.* (6)
shoes kutsu *n.* (39)
shoot, to utsu *vt. I.*
shop mise *n.*
short mijikai *adj.*
shorten, to chijimeru *vt. II.*, chijimaru *vi. I.*
shoulder kata *n.*
show, to miseru *vt. II.*
shrink, to chijimu *vi. I.*
shut, to shimeru *vt. II.* (17), tojiru *vt. II.*
sick, be kimochi-ga warui
sick, become byooki-ni naru
sickness byooki *n.*
sick person byoonin *n.*
side soba, waki, yoko *n.*
sidewise yoko-no *n-adj.*
silk kinu *n.*
silkworm kaiko *n.*
silver gin *n.*
simple tanjun-na, kantan-na *n-adj.*
sin tsumi *n.*
since kara, yori *postp.* (19)
sincere makoto-no, majime-na *n-adj.*
sing, to utau *vt. I.*
sink, to shizumu *vi. I.*
sit, to (in a chair) kakeru, koshi-kakeru *vi. II.*
sit, to (on the floor) suwaru *vi. I.* (18)
six muttsu, roku *n-adj.* (29, 30)
 — **days** muika, — (cup)-fuls roppai, — **minutes** roppun, — **“heads”** roppiki, — **pairs**, — **sets** mukumi, — **“sticks”** roppon (32, 36)
sixth day of the month muika (36)
size ookisa *n.*
skilful joozu-na *n-adj.*, umai *adj.*
skill jukuren *n.*
skilled worker jukurenkoo *n.*
skin kawa, hifu *n.*
skirt hakama, sukaato *n.*
sky sora *n.*
sleep, to nemuru *vi. I.*, neru *vi. II.*

- sleeve sode *n.*
 slide, to suberu *vi., vt. I.*
 slip, to suberu *vi., vt. I.*
 slow osoi, noroi *adj.*
 small chiisai *adj.* (5)
 smell nioi *n.*
 smell, to niou *vi. I., kagu vt. I.*
 smile, to nikoniko-suru *vi. irr.,*
 warau *vi. I.*
 smoke kemu, kemuri *n.*
 smoke, to tabako-wo nomu
 smokestack entotsu *n.*
 smooth taira-na (6), namera-
 ka-na *n.-adj.*
 snake hebi *n.*
 snow yuki *n.*
 so soo *adv.* (3)
 soap shabon, sekken *n.*
 society shakai *n.*
 soft yawarakai *adj.*
 soil (earth) tsuchi, doru *n.*
 soiled yogoreta (*adj.*), kitanai
 (dirty) *adj.*
 soiled, be yogoreru *vi. II.*
 soldiers heitai, gunjin *n.*
 solution eki, yooeki *n.*
 solve, to toku *vt. I.*
 some ikuraka-no, ikutsuka-no,
 sukoshi-no *n.-adj.* (44)
 some (certain) aru (*adj.*)
 somebody dareka
 some other time itsuka
 song uta *n.*
 soon jiki-ni, mamonaku *adv.*
 sore itai *adj.*
 sorrow kanashimi *n.*
 sorry kanashii *adj.*
 sort (kind) shurui, rui *n.*
 sound oto *n.*
 south minami *n.*
 speak, to hanasu *vi., vt. I.* (47)
 special tokubetsu-no *n.-adj.*
 spectacles megane *n.*
 speed hayasa, sokuryoku *n.*
 spider kumo *n.*
 spike kugi *n.*
 spill, to kobosu, nagasu *vt. I.*
 spirit seishin, tamashii, genki
 (liveliness), yuurei (ghost) *n.*
 spring haru (season) *n.*
 spring (steel) bane *n.*
 sprout me *n.*
 stab, to tsuku, sasu *vt. I.*
 staircase dan, hashigo-dan *n.*
 (39)
 stalk kuki *n.*
 stand, to tatsu *vi. I.* (18)
 standard hyoojun *n.*
 standing screen tsuitate *n.*
 (39)
 star hoshi *n.*
 station, railway teishaba,
 eki *n.*
 statue zoo *n.*
 steal, to nusumu *vt. I.*
 steam jooki, yuge *n.*
 steamer kisen *n.*
 steel hagane, kootetsu *n.*
 stem kuki, e *n.*
 step (of a staircase) dan *n.* (39)

- step on, to fumu *vt. I.*
 stick boo *n.*
 stick, to tsuku *vi. I.*, tsukeru *vt. II.*
 stillness shizukesa *n.*
 stimulate, to shigeki-suru *vt. irr.*
 stimulus shigeki *n.*
 stingy kechi-na *n-adj.*
 stomach *i n.*
 stomach (abdomen) hara *n.*
 stone ishi *n.* (39)
 stone lantern ishi-dooroo *n.* (54)
 stop, to tomaru *vi I.*, tomeru *vt. II.*
 stop, to (to clog) fusagu *vt. I.*
 stop, to (give up) yameru *vt. II.*
 store (shop) mise *n.*
 store (accumulation) takuwae *n.*
 store, to takuwaeru, *vt. II.*, chozoo-suru *vt. irr.*
 storehouse sooko, kura *n.*
 storey kai *suf.* (52)
 story hanashi *n.* (42, 51)
 straight massugu-na *n-adj.*
 straight line choku-sen *n.*
 straw wara *n.*
 strawberry ichigo *n.*
 stream nagare *n.*
 street machi, toori *n.* (52)
 street car densha *n.* (21)
 strength chikara, tsuyosa *n.*
 stretch, to nobiru *vi. II.*, nobasu *vt. I.*
 strict kibishii, katai *adj.*
 strike, to utsu, butsu *vt. I.*
 string himo *n.*
 strong tsuyoi *adj.* (46)
 study benkyoo, kenkyuu *n.*
 study, to benkyoo-suru, kenkyuu-suru *vt. irr.*
 style kata, shiki *n.*
 subject (problem) dai, dai-moku *n.*
 subjugate, to shitagaeru *vt. II.*
 substitute kawari-no, daiyoo-no *n-adj.*
 subway chika-tetsu (railway) chika-doo (road) *n.*
 succeed, to seikoo-suru *vi. irr.*
 success seikoo *n.*
 suck, to suu *vt. I.*
 sudden totsuzen-no *n-adj.*
 suffer, to kurushimu *vt. I.*
 suffering kurushimi *n.*
 sugar satoo *n.*
 summer natsu *n.*
 summit itadaki, choojoo *n.*
 sun taiyoo, hi *n.*
 Sunday Nichiyooobi *n.* (36)
 sure tashika-na *n-adj.*
 surely tashika-ni, kanarazu *adv.*
 surprise, to odorokasu *vt. I.*
 surprised, be odoroku *vi. I.*
 surround, to kakomu *vt. I.*
 sweep, to haku *vt. I.*
 sweet (in taste) amai *adj.*

- sweetness amasa *n.*
 sweets(confectionary)o-kashi,
 kashi *n.* (44)
 swell, to fukureru *vi.* II.,
 fukuramu *vi.* I.
 swim, to oyogu *vt.* I.
 swing, to furu, furimawasu
 vt. I.
 sword katana *n.*
 syllabary kana *n.*
 sympathise, to doojoo-suru
 vi. irr.
 sympathy doojoo *n.*
 system soshiki *n.*
- T**
- table dai, tsukue *n.* (15)
 tack byoo *n.*
 tag fuda *n.*
 tail o, shippo *n.*
 take, to toru *vt.* I. (23, 24, 39)
 take out, to dasu *vt.* I.
 talk hanashi *n.*
 talk, to hanasu *vt.* I.
 tall takai, se no takai *adj.*
 tame nareta (*adj.*)
 tame, to narasu *vt.* I.
 tame, become nareru *vi.* II.
 taste aji (of food), konomi
 (liking) *n.*
 taste, to ajiwau *vt.* I., aji-wo
 miru
 tax zei *n.*
 tea cha, o-cha *n.* (16)
 tea cup yunomi *n.*
 tea kettle (of earthen ware)
 dobin *n.* (26)
 teach, to oshieru *vt.* II. (38)
 teacher sensei *n.* (49)
 teaching (precept) oshie *n.*
 tear namida *n.*
 tear, to saku *vt.* I., sakeru
 vi. II.
 telegram denpoo *n.*
 telegraph denshin *n.*
 telephone denwa *n.*
 telephone, to denwa-wo
 kakeru
 tell, to hanasu *vi., vt.* I. (51)
 temporary kari-no, ichiji-no
 n-adj.
 ten too, juu *n-adj.*, (29, 30);
 — days tooka, — (cup)-fuls
 jippai, — “heads” jippiki,
 — minutes jippun, — pairs
 — sets to-kumi, — sen
 jissen, — “sticks” jippon,
 — volumes jissatsu (32, 35)
 tenth day of the month tooka
 (36)
 ten thousand man, ichi-man
 n-adj. (30)
 textile ori-mono *n.*
 than yori *adv.* (34)
 thank, to kansha-suru *vt. irr.*
 thank you arigatoo (27)
 that:sono, ano (*adj.*) (8); sore,
 are *pron.* (1)
 theater gekijoo *n.*
 there soko (9), asoko *pron.*

- therefore** kara, dakara *con.*
 (47)
thick atsui, futoi (big) *adj.*
thickness atsusa, futosa (big-
 ness) *n.*
thief doroboo *n.*
thin usui (in thickness) *adj.*,
 yaseta (emaciated) (*adj.*)
thin, grow yaseru (emaciate)
vi. II.
thing mono, shina *n.* (13)
think omou *vi., vt. I.* (42),
 kangaeru *vi., vt. II.*
third day of the month
 mikka (36)
this kore *pron.* (1), kono
 (*adj.*) (8)
this month kon-getsu (36)
this week kon-shuu (36)
this year kotoshi, kon-nen (36)
thought kangae *n.*
thousand sen, one thousand
 issen *n.-adj.* (30)
thread ito *n.*
three mittsu, san *n.-adj.* (28,
 30); — days mikka, — (cup)-
 fuls san-bai, — “heads”
 san-biki, — minutes san-
 pun, — pairs — sets mi-
 kumi, — “sticks” san-bon
 32, 35, 36)
throat nodo *n.*
throw, to nageru *vt. II.*, hooru
vt. I.
throw away, to suteru *vt. II.*
- thunder** kaminari, rai *n.*
Thursday Mokuyoobi *n.* (36)
ticket kippu *n.* (37)
tie, to musubu *vt. I.*
till made *postp.*
till, to tagayasu *vt. I.*
time toki (39), jikan *n.* (35)
time (as three times) do, hen
suf.
tired tsukareta (*adj.*)
tired, be tsukareru *vi. II.*
tired of, be (lose interest)
 akiru *vi. II.*
to ni, e *postp.* (9, 27)
tobacco tabako *n.* (16)
tobacco tray tabako-bon *n.*
 (16)
today kyoo, kon-nichi (36)
together issho-ni *adv.*
tomorrow ashita, asu, myoo-
 nichi *n.* (22, 36)
tongue shita *n.*
tool doogu *n.*
tooth ha *n.*
top ue, choojoo *n.* (11)
topple over, to taoreru *vi. II.*
touch, to sawaru *vi. I.*, fureru
vi. II.
town machi *n.* (52)
train (railway) kisha *n.* (50)
trample, to fumu *vt. I.*, fumi-
 tsukeru *vt. II.*
translate, to honyaku-suru
vt. irr.
translation honyaku *n.*

travel *tabi, ryokoo n.*

travel, to *tabi-suru, ryokoo-suru vi. irr.*

tray *bon, sara (dish) n. (26)*

tree *ki n. (10, 39)*

tremble, to *furueru vi. II.*

trial *kokoromi (experiment), saiban (judgment) n.*

trouble *mendoo n.*

troubled, be *komaru vi. I. (49)*

troublesome *mendoo-na n.*

trousers *zubon n. [adj.]*

try, to *kokoromiru vt. II., yatte-miru vt. II., shi-te-miru vt. II. (24)*

tub *oke, tarai n.*

Tuesday *Kayoobi n. (36)*

turbid *nigotta (adj.)*

turbid, grow *nigoru vi. I.*

turbidity *nigori n.*

turn (number) *ban, junban n.*

twentieth day of the month *hatsuka (36)*

twenty *ni-juu n-adj. (30)*

twenty days *hatsuka (36)*

twist, to *nejiru vt. I.*

twisted, become *nejireru vi. II.*

twisted *nejireta adj.*

two *futatsu, ni n-adj. (28, 30)*

— **days** *futsuka, — persons futari, — pairs — sets futakumi (32, 36)*

type *kata (style), katsuji (of printing) n.*

U

ugly *minikui, kitanai adj. (6)*

umbrella *kasa n.*

uncle *oji n.*

under *shita n., -no shita-ni (11)*

underground *chika n-adj.*

under-shirt *shatsu n.*

understand, to *wakaru vi. I., rikai-suru vt. I.*

unit *tan-i n.*

university *daigaku n. (54)*

unreasonable *muri-na n-adj.*

untie, to *hodokeru, tokeru vt. I.*

untied, become *tokeru vi. II.*

until *made (20)*

upon *-no ue-ni (11)*

upside down *sakasama-na n-adj.*

use, to *tsukau vt. I. (37)*

V

vacation *yasumi, kyuuka n.*

vague *bonyari-shita (adj.)*

vegetables *yasai n.*

vertical *tate-no, suichoku-no n-adj.*

very *taihen, hijoo-ni adv. (14)*

victory *kachi, shoori n.*

view (scene) *nagame n.*

view, to *nagameru vt. II.*

village *mura n.*

virtue *toku n.*

voice *koe n.*

volume taiseki, yooseki *n.*
volume satsu *numeral adjunct*
 (31)
vomit, to haku *vt. I.*
vulgar iyashii *adj.*, katoo-na
n-adj.

W

wait, to matsu *vt. I.*
wait on, to kyuuji-suru *vi. irr.*
waiter kyuuji, booi *n.*
wake up, to okiru *vi. II.*, me-
 wo samasu, okosu *vt. I.* (24)
wall kabe *n.* (16, 54)
want, to -tai *aux. v.* (52), hoshii
adj. (52), hoshigaru *vt. I.*
war sensoo *n.*
warm atatakai *adj.*
warmth atatakasa *n.*
warrior doll musha ningyoo
n. (46)
wash, to arau *vt. I.*, sentaku-
 suru *vt. irr.*
watch (timepiece) tokei *n.*
watch, to chuui-suru, mihari-
 suru *vt. irr.*
water mizu *n.* (21)
water-closet benjo, habakari
n.
water tap suidoo-sen *n.*
water works suidoo *n.*
wave nami *n.*
weak yowai *adj.*
wear, to kiru (on body) *vt. II.*,
 kaburu (on head) *vt. I.*, haku

(on feet) *vt. I.* (39)
wear out, to suri-kireru *vi. II.*
weather tenki *n.*
weave, to oru *vt. I.*
Wednesday Suiyooobi *n.* (36)
weed kusa, zassoo *n.*
week shuukan *n.* (36)
weep, to naku, susuri-naku
vi. I.
weigh, to hakaru *vt. I.*
weight omosa *n.*
welcome kangei *n.*
well ido *n.*
well yoku *adv.*
west nishi *n.*
wet nureta, shimetta (*adj.*)
wet, become nureru *vi. II.*
what? nani, nan *pron. & (adj.)*
 (2)
what day of the month?
 nan-nichi, **what day of the**
week? nani-yoobi, **what**
month? nan-gatsu, **what**
time? nan-ji (35, 36) **what**
kind of donna (5)
wheat mugi *n.*
wheel kuruma, sharin *n.*
when? itsu *pron. & adv.* (19)
where? doko, dochira *pron.* (9)
which? dore (which one
 among many), dochira
 (which one of the two)
pron.; dono (among many),
 dochira-no (of the two) *adj.*
 (33, 34)

- while** aida-ni *adj.*, nagara *suf.*
whip muchi *n.*
white shiro *n.*, shiroi *adj.*
who? donata, dare *pron.* (4)
wide hiroi *adj.* (7)
width hirosa, haba *n.*
wife fujin, tsuma, oku-san
n. (39)
will power ishi *n.*
win, to katsu *vi.* *I.*
wind kaze *n.*
wind, to maku *vt.* *I.*
window mado *n.* (15)
wine sake *n.*
winter fuyu *n.*
wipe, to fuku, nuguu *vt.* *I.*
wire harigane *n.*
wise rikoo-na *n-adj.* (13),
 kashikoi *adj.*
wish negai, nozomi *n.*
wish, to negau, nozomu *vt.* *I.*
with de *postp.*, wo motte
woman onna, onna-no hito
n. (42)
wood ki *n.* (10, 39); **wooden**
 ki-no *n-adj.*
wooden clog geta *n.* (35)
word kotoba *n.*
work shigoto, tsutome, yoo *n.*
work, to hataraku *vi.* *I.*,
 tsutomeru *vi.* *II.* shigoto-wo
 suru
world sekai *n.*
worm mushi *n.* (10)
worry shinpai *n.*
- worry**, to shinpai-suru *vt.*
irr.
wound kega *n.*
wounded, be kega-suru *vi.*
irr.
wrap, to tsutsumu *vt.* *I.*
wrapping paper tsutsumi-
 gami *n.*
wrestle, to sumoo-wo toru
wrestling sumoo *n.*
write, to kaku *vt.* *I.* (23)
writing brush fude *n.*
- Y
- yard** niwa *n.* (10)
year toshi *n.*, nen *suf.* (36)
years old -sai *suf.* (36)
yell, to donaru, sakebu *vt.* *I.*
yellow kiiri *n.*, kiirui *adj.*
yes hai *interj.* (2)
yesterday kinoo, sakujitsu *n.*
 (19, 36)
yet mada *adv.* (43)
you anata, kimi (used by
 young men), omae (used
 toward inferior persons)
pron. (2)
young wakai *adj.*
younger brother ootoo *n.*
younger sister imooto *n.*
- Z
- zero** rei *n.* (30)
zoological garden doobutsu-
 en *n.*

JAPANESE IN 30 HOURS
(日本語三十時間)

昭和17年10月17日 初版発行
昭和53年2月10日 改訂新版発行

著 者 きよ おか えい いる
 清 岡 暎 一

発行所 株式北星堂書店
 会社
代表者 中土順平



東京都千代田区神田錦町3丁目12番地
〒101 振替口座 東京 16024 番
電話 (03) 294-3301 (代表) 番

THE HOKUSEIDO PRESS
12, 3-Chome, Nishikicho, Kanda, Tokyo, Japan

Price ¥ 700 in Japan

